

Oracle® Communications

Diameter Signaling Router

DSR Cloud Software Upgrade Guide

Release 8.5.1

F51300-01

December 2021

ORACLE®

Oracle® Communications Diameter Signaling Router, Cloud Software Upgrade User's Guide, Release 8.5

Copyright © 2011, 2021 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable: U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.



CAUTION: Use only the Upgrade procedure included in the Upgrade Kit.

Before upgrading any system, please access My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) and review any Technical Service Bulletins (TSBs) that relate to this upgrade.

My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at 1-800-223-1711 (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

See more information on My Oracle Support (MOS).

Table of Contents

1. Introduction.....	11
1.1 Purpose and Scope.....	11
1.1.1 What is Not Covered by this Document.....	11
1.2 References.....	11
1.3 Acronyms.....	11
1.4 Terminology.....	13
1.5 How to Use this Document.....	14
1.5.1 Executing Procedures.....	15
1.6 Recommendations.....	15
1.6.1 Frequency of Health Checks.....	15
1.6.2 Large Installation Support.....	15
1.6.3 Logging of Upgrade Activities.....	15
1.7 Warnings, Cautions, and Notes.....	16
1.7.1 Signaling Firewall.....	16
1.7.2 Network IDIH Compatibility.....	16
1.7.3 Review Release Notes.....	16
1.7.4 Upgrade Check.....	17
2. General Description	17
2.1 Supported Upgrade Paths to 8.5.....	17
2.2 Geo-Diverse Site (Active/Standby/Spare PCA Configuration).....	18
2.3 Traffic Management During Upgrade.....	18
2.4 Automated Site Upgrade.....	19
2.4.1 Site Upgrade Execution.....	20
2.4.2 Minimum Server Availability.....	24
2.4.3 Site Upgrade Options.....	25
2.4.4 Cancel and Restart Auto Site Upgrade.....	26
2.5 Automated Server Group Upgrade.....	29
2.5.1 Cancel and Restart Automated Server Group Upgrade.....	29
2.5.2 Site Accept.....	30
3. Upgrade Planning and Pre-Upgrade Procedures.....	31
3.1 Required Materials and Information.....	31
3.1.1 Application ISO Image File/Media.....	32
3.1.2 Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses.....	32
3.2 Plan Upgrade Maintenance Windows.....	35
3.2.1 Calculating Maintenance Windows Required.....	36
3.3 Site Upgrade Methodology Selection.....	36

3.3.1	DA-MP Upgrade Planning.....	39
3.3.2	Pre-upgrade validation to avoid Comcol inter-connectivity issue between MPs	40
3.3.3	Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Site Upgrades)	41
3.3.4	Maintenance Window 2 and Beyond (SOAM Site Upgrades)	41
3.4	Prerequisite Procedures	45
3.4.1	Required Materials Check.....	45
3.4.2	DSR ISO Administration	47
3.4.3	Data Collection — Verification of Global and Site Configuration Data	51
3.4.4	Back Up TKLCConfigData Files.....	56
3.4.5	Full Backup of DB Run Environment at Each Server	57
3.4.6	IDIH Pre-Upgrade	60
3.5	Software Upgrade Execution Overview	61
3.5.1	Accepting the Upgrade	62
4.	NOAM Upgrade Execution.....	62
4.1	NOAM Pre-Upgrade Checks and Backup.....	63
4.1.1	NOAM Health Check for Source Release 8.0 and Later	64
4.1.2	NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup.....	67
4.2	Disable Global Provisioning	68
4.3	NOAM Upgrade	69
4.4	Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status	70
4.5	Allow Provisioning (Post NOAM Upgrade).....	72
5.	Site Upgrade Execution	73
5.1	Site Pre-Upgrade Activities	73
5.1.1	Site Pre-Upgrade Backups	74
5.1.2	Site Pre-Upgrade Health Checks.....	77
5.1.3	Site Upgrade Options Check	81
5.1.4	Disable Site Provisioning	82
5.2	Automated Site Upgrade	83
5.2.1	Site Upgrade Pre-Checks	83
5.2.2	Initiate Automated Site Upgrade	84
5.2.3	Rearrange Automated Site Upgrade Cycles.....	88
5.3	Automated Server Group/Manual Upgrade Overview.....	91
5.3.1	Site Upgrade Planning	93
5.3.2	SOAM Upgrade Overview.....	95
5.3.3	Upgrade SOAMs	96
5.3.4	Upgrade Iteration 3	98
5.3.5	Upgrade Iteration 4	112

5.3.6	Upgrade Iteration 5	118
5.4	Site Post-Upgrade Procedures.....	120
5.4.1	Allow Site Provisioning.....	120
5.4.2	Site Post-Upgrade Health Checks	120
5.4.3	Post-Upgrade Procedures	126
6.	Backout Procedure Overview.....	127
6.1	Recovery Procedures.....	129
6.2	Backout Health Check.....	129
6.3	Disable Global Provisioning	133
6.4	Perform Emergency Backout	133
6.4.1	Emergency Site Backout.....	133
6.4.2	Emergency NOAM Backout.....	135
6.5	Perform Normal Backout	137
6.5.1	Normal Site Backout	137
6.5.2	Normal NOAM Backout.....	141
6.6	Back Out Single Server	142
6.7	Back Out Multiple Servers.....	148
6.8	Post-Backout Health Check	156
6.9	IDIH Backout	156
6.9.1	Oracle Server Backout.....	156
6.9.2	Mediation and Application Server Backout	156
Appendix A.	Post Upgrade Procedures.....	157
Appendix A.1.	Accept Upgrade	157
Appendix A.2.	Undeploy ISO.....	159
Appendix A.3.	Post Upgrade Accept Procedures.....	160
Appendix B.	Increase Maximum Number of Open Files	161
Appendix C.	Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x.....	164
Appendix D.	Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration	170
Appendix E.	IDIH Upgrade at a Site	178
Appendix E.1.	Upgrade Oracle Guest	179
Appendix E.2.	Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests	182
Appendix F.	Alternate Server Upgrade Procedures.....	182
Appendix F.1.	Alternate Pre-Upgrade Backup	183
Appendix F.2.	Server Upgrade Using platcfg.....	185
Appendix F.3.	Manual DA-MP (N+0) Upgrade Procedure	188
Appendix F.4.	ASG SBR Upgrade Procedure.....	189
Appendix F.5.	Manual SBR Upgrade Procedure.....	189

Appendix G. Expired Password Workaround Procedure	193
Appendix G.1. Inhibit Password Aging	193
Appendix G.2. Enable Password Aging	195
Appendix G.3. Password Reset.....	196
Appendix H. Network IDIH Compatibility Procedures	197
Appendix I. Recover From a Failed Upgrade	198
Appendix J. Critical and Major Alarms Analysis	203
Appendix K. Additional Backout Steps	214
Appendix L. Additional Post-Backout Steps	217
Appendix M. Manual Completion of Server Upgrade	219
Appendix N. Identify the DC server	223
Appendix O. Limitations of Automated Server Group and Automated Site Upgrade	225
Appendix P. Advanced Health Check Procedure	227
Appendix Q. Workaround to Resolve DB Site Replication Alarms	230
Appendix R. Workaround to Resolve the Server HA Switchover Issue	231
Appendix S. Workaround to Resolve Device Deployment Failed Alarm	232
Appendix T. Workaround to Resolve syscheck Error for CPU Failure	234
Appendix U. Create a Link for ComAgent	235
Appendix V. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity	236
Appendix W. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on a Virtualized Environment	238
Appendix X. My Oracle Support (MOS)	244
Appendix Y. Reset the SOAP Password	238
Appendix Z. Restore the Servers with Backout Errors	243

List of Tables

Table 1: Acronyms	11
Table 2: Terminology	13
Table 3. Server Selection vs. Server Group Function	23
Table 4. Site Upgrade Availability vs. Server Group Function	25
Table 5: Logins, Passwords, and Server IP Addresses.....	32
Table 6. Traffic Analysis Checklist	37
Table 7. DA-MP Upgrade Planning Sheet	40
Table 8. Prerequisite Procedures Overview	45
Table 9. Release Specific Data Collection Procedures	52
Table 10. IDIH Upgrade Preparation Overview	60
Table 11. NOAM Upgrade Execution Overview.....	62

Table 12. Site Upgrade Execution Overview	73
Table 13. Non-PCA/PDRA Site Upgrade Plan.....	92
Table 14. Two-Site Redundancy PCA Site Upgrade Plan	92
Table 15. Three-Site Redundancy PCA Site Upgrade Plan	92
Table 16. Site Upgrade Planning Sheet.....	93
Table 17. Site Upgrade Execution Overview	95
Table 18. SOAM Upgrade Execution Overview.....	95
Table 19. Iteration 3 Upgrade Execution Overview	98
Table 20. Iteration 4 Upgrade Execution Overview.	112
Table 21. Iteration 5 Upgrade Execution Overview	118
Table 22. Emergency Backout Procedure Overview	127
Table 23. Normal Backout Procedure Overview.....	128
Table 24. IDIH Upgrade Execution Overview	178
Table 25. High Impact Alarms.....	203
Table 26. Medium Impact Alarms	207

List of Figures

Figure 1. Example Procedure Steps Used in This Document	15
Figure 2. DSR 8.5 Supported Upgrade Paths.....	18
Figure 3. Upgrade Perspective of DSR "Site" Topology	20
Figure 4. Site Upgrade – NOAM View	21
Figure 5. Site Upgrade - Entire Site View	21
Figure 6. Site Upgrade - Site Initiate Screen	22
Figure 7. Site Upgrade Monitoring.....	24
Figure 8. Server Group Upgrade Monitoring.....	24
Figure 9. Auto Site Upgrade General Options	25
Figure 10. Site Upgrade Active Tasks	26
Figure 11. Canceled Site Upgrade Tasks	27
Figure 12. Partially Upgraded Site	27
Figure 13. Restarting Site Upgrade	28
Figure 14. Active Tasks Screen	29
Figure 15. Site Accept Button	30
Figure 16. Site Accept Screen	30
Figure 17. Upgrade Maintenance Windows for 3-Tier Upgrade	35
Figure 18. Specialized Fixed Diameter Connections	225
Figure 19. Specialized Floating Diameter Connections.....	226

Figure 20. Specialized Distribution of DSR Features	226
---	-----

List of Procedures

Procedure 1. Required Materials Check	46
Procedure 2. DSR ISO Administration	47
Procedure 3. Verification of Configuration Data	51
Procedure 4. Data Collection for Source Release 8.0 and Later	53
Procedure 5. TKLCConfigData backup	57
Procedure 6. Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 8.0.x and Later	58
Procedure 7. IDIH Upgrade Preparation	61
Procedure 8. NOAM Health Check for Source Release 8.0 or Later	64
Procedure 9. NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup	67
Procedure 10. Disable Global Provisioning	68
Procedure 11. NOAM Upgrade	69
Procedure 12. Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status	70
Procedure 13. Allow Provisioning (Post NOAM Upgrade)	72
Procedure 14. Site Pre-Upgrade Backups	74
Procedure 15. Site Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 8.0 and Later	78
Procedure 16. Site Upgrade Options Check	81
Procedure 17. Disable Site Provisioning	82
Procedure 18. Site Upgrade Pre-Checks	83
Procedure 19. Automated Site Upgrade	84
Procedure 20. Rearrangement of upgrade cycles for Automated Site Upgrade	88
Procedure 21. SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks	96
Procedure 22. Automated SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby)	97
Procedure 23. Manual SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby/Spare)	97
Procedure 24. Upgrade Iteration 3	98
Procedure 25. Upgrade Iteration 4	112
Procedure 26. Upgrade Iteration 5	118
Procedure 27. Allow Site Provisioning	120
Procedure 28. Site Post-Upgrade Health Check	121
Procedure 29. Alternate SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check	124
Procedure 30. Post-Upgrade Procedures	126
Procedure 31. Backout Health Check	129
Procedure 32. Disable Global Provisioning	133
Procedure 33. Emergency Site Backout	134

Procedure 34. Emergency NOAM Backout.....	135
Procedure 35. Normal Site Backout.....	137
Procedure 36. Normal NOAM Backout	141
Procedure 37. Back Out Single Server	142
Procedure 38. Back Out Multiple Servers	148
Procedure 39. Post-Backout Health Check.....	156
Procedure 40. Accept Upgrade.....	157
Procedure 41. Undeploy ISO	159
Procedure 42. Post Upgrade Accept Procedure.	160
Procedure 43. Increase Maximum Number of Open Files	161
Procedure 44. Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration – DSR 8.x.....	164
Procedure 45. Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration	170
Procedure 46. Upgrade Oracle Guest.....	179
Procedure 47. Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests	182
Procedure 48. Alternate Pre-Upgrade Backup.....	183
Procedure 49. Server Upgrade Using Platcfg	185
Procedure 50. Manual DA-MP (N+0) Upgrade Procedure.....	188
Procedure 51. ASG SBR Upgrade	189
Procedure 52. Manual SBR Upgrade Procedure	189
Procedure 53. Expired Password Workaround Procedure	194
Procedure 54. Expired Password Workaround Removal Procedure	195
Procedure 55. Expired Password Reset Procedure.....	196
Procedure 56. Enable IDIH 8.x Compatibility	197
Procedure 57. Disable IDIH 8.x Compatibility	197
Procedure 58. Recover from a Failed Upgrade	198
Procedure 59. Verify Critical and Major Alarms in the System Before the Upgrade.....	203
Procedure 60. Additional Backout Steps for NOAM, SOAM, and SBR Server(s)	214
Procedure 61. Additional Post Backout Steps for NOAM, SOAM, and SBR Server(s)	217
Procedure 62. Manual Completion of Server Upgrade	219
Procedure 63. Identification of the DC server	223
Procedure 64. Firewall Check for DNS Port 53.....	227
Procedure 65. Workaround to Resolve DB Site Replication Alarms.....	230
Procedure 66. Resolve the HA Switchover Issue on Affected Server(s)	231
Procedure 67. Resolve Device Deployment Failed Alarm	232
Procedure 68. Workaround to Resolve syscheck Error for CPU Failure	234
Procedure 69. Create a Link for ComAgent.....	235
Procedure 70. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity	236

Procedure 71. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on a Virtualized Environment 238

Procedure 72. Reset the SOAP Password 241

Procedure 73. Restore the Servers with Backout Errors 243

1. Introduction

1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes methods utilized and procedures executed to perform the following upgrades: 8.1.2, 8.2.1, 8.3, 8.3.X, 8.4, 8.4.0.X.Y to 8.5.

X = PI End Cycle

Y = Patches within the PI Cycle.

The upgrade of cloud deployments is covered by this document. The audience for this document includes Oracle customers as well as following internal groups: Software Development, Quality Assurance, Information Development, and Consulting Services including NPx. This document provides instructions to execute any incremental or major cloud software upgrade.

The execution of this procedure assumes that the target DSR software load (ISO file, CD-ROM or other form of media) has already been delivered to the customer's premises. This includes delivery of the software load to the local workstation being used to perform this upgrade.

Note: To understand the capacity/performance impact of this software release, refer to the [8] DSR 8.5 Cloud Benchmarking document.

1.1.1 What is Not Covered by this Document

The following items are beyond the scope of this document. Refer to the specified reference for additional information.

- Distribution of DSR 8.x software loads. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for the software loads as described in Appendix Z.
- Initial installation of DSR software. Refer to [1].
- SDS installation. Refer to [2].

1.2 References

[1] DSR 8.5 Cloud Installation Guide

[2] SDS Cloud Installation document

[3] Maintenance Window Analysis Tool CGBU_010314

[4] Fast Deployment and Configuration Tool Technical Reference, CGBU_ENG_24_2353

[5] Cloud DSR 8.5 Disaster Recovery Guide

[6] Oracle Communications DSR Introducing SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) In DSR 8.5 By Enabling SCTP AUTH Extensions By Default, OSD 2019141.1

[7] DSR Alarms and KPIs Reference

[8] DSR 8.5 Cloud Benchmarking document

1.3 Acronyms

An alphabetized list of acronyms used in the document.

Table 1: Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning
ASG	Automated Server Group upgrade

Acronym	Meaning
ASU	Automated Site Upgrade
CD-ROM	Compact Disc Read-only Media
CPA	Charging Proxy Agent
CSV	Comma-separated Values
DA	Diameter Agent
DA MP	Diameter Agent Message Processor
DB	Database
DP	Data Processor
DR	Disaster Recovery
DSR	Diameter Signaling Router
DSR DR NOAM	Disaster Recovery DSR NOAM
FABR	Full Address Based Resolution
FOA	First Office Application
GA	General Availability
GPS	Global Product Solutions
GUI	Graphical User Interface
HA	High Availability
IDIH	Integrated Diameter Intelligence Hub
IMI	Internal Management Interface
IP	Internet Protocol
IPM	Initial Product Manufacture
IPFE	IP Front End
ISO	ISO 9660 file system (when used in the context of this document)
LA	Limited Availability
MOP	Method of Procedure
MP	Message Processing or Message Processor
MW	Maintenance Window
NE	Network Element
NOAM	Network OAM
OAM	Operations, Administration and Maintenance
OFCS	Offline Charging Solution
PCA	Policy and Charging Agent (formerly known as PDRA)
PDRA	Policy Diameter Routing Agent
SBR	Session Binding Repository
SDS	Subscriber Database Server

Acronym	Meaning
SOAM	System OAM
TPD	Tekelec Platform Distribution
UI	User Interface
VIP	Virtual IP
VPN	Virtual Private Network
XMI	External Management Interface
XSI	External Signaling Interface
vSTP	Virtual Signaling Transfer Point

1.4 Terminology

This section describes terminology as it is used within this document.

Table 2: Terminology

Term	Definition
Upgrade	The process of converting an application from its current release on a system to a newer release.
Major Upgrade	An upgrade from one DSR release to another DSR release, e.g., DSR 8.0 to 8.2.
Incremental Upgrade	An upgrade within a given DSR release e.g. 8.2.x to 8.2.y.
Release	Release is any particular distribution of software that is different from any other distribution.
Source Release	Software release to upgrade from
Target Release	Software release to upgrade to
Single Server Upgrade	The process of converting a DSR 8.2 server from its current release to a newer release.
Backout	The process of converting a single DSR 8.2 server to a prior version. This could be performed due to failure in Single Server Upgrade or the upgrade cannot be accepted for some other reason. Backout is a user initiated process.
Rollback	Automatic recovery procedure that puts a server into its pre-upgrade status. This procedure occurs automatically during upgrade if there is a failure.
Primary NOAM Network Element	The network element that contains the active and standby NOAM servers in a DSR.
Signaling Network Element	Any network element that contains DA-MPs (and possibly other C-level servers), thus carrying out Diameter signaling functions. Each SOAM pair and its associated C-level servers are considered a single signaling network element. And if a signaling network element includes a server that hosts the NOAMs, that signaling network element is also considered to be the primary NOAM network element.
Site	Physical location where one or more network elements reside. The site is defined by the SOAM.

Term	Definition
Geographic Site	A Geographic Site is defined as the physical location of a SOAM and its co-located children, as well as its non-preferred spare SOAM(s). In this document, a Geographic Site is designated as GSite .
Topological Site	A Topological Site is defined as a SOAM Server Group and all C-level Server Groups that are children of the SOAM. All servers within a server group belong to the server group's site, regardless of the physical location of the server. Thus, for upgrade, a Topological Site does not correlate to a 'network element' or a 'place'. In this document, a Topological Site is designated as TSite .
Health Check	Procedure used to determine the health and status of the DSR's internal network. This includes status displayed from the DSR GUI and PM&C GUI. This can be observed pre-server upgrade, in-progress server upgrade, and post-server upgrade.
Upgrade Ready	State that allows for graceful upgrade of a server without degradation of service. It is a state that a server is required to be in before upgrading a server. The state is defined by the following attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server is Forced Standby • Server is Application Disabled (signaling servers do not process any traffic)
UI	User interface. Platcfg UI refers specifically to the Platform Configuration Utility User Interface, which is a text-based user interface.
N+0	Set up with N active DA-MP(s), but no standby DA-MP.
NOAM	Network OAM for DSR.
SOAM	System OAM for DSR.
Migration	Changing policy and resources after upgrade (if required). For example, changing from 1+1 (active/standby) policy to N+ 0 (multiple active) policies.
Software Centric	The business practice of delivering an Oracle software product, while relying upon the customer to procure the requisite hardware components. Oracle provides the hardware specifications, but does not provide the hardware, and is not responsible for hardware installation, configuration, or maintenance.
Enablement	The business practice of providing support services (hardware, software, documentation, etc) that enable a 3rd party entity to install, configuration, and maintain Oracle products for Oracle customers.

1.5 How to Use this Document

1. When executing the procedures in this document, there are a few key points which help to ensure that the user understands procedure convention. These points are: Before beginning a procedure, completely read the instructional text (it displays immediately after the Section heading for each procedure) and all associated procedural WARNINGS or NOTES.
2. Before execution of a STEP within a procedure, completely read the left and right columns including any STEP specific WARNINGS or NOTES.
3. If a procedural STEP fails to execute successfully or fails to receive the desired output, STOP. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for assistance, before attempting to continue.

1.7 Warnings, Cautions, and Notes

This section presents notices of warnings and cautions that directly relate to the success of the upgrade. It is imperative that each of these notices be read and understood before continuing with the upgrade. If there are any conflicts, issues, or questions related to these notices, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) before starting the upgrade.

1.7.1 Signaling Firewall

Signaling firewall remains disabled when upgrade is done from Pre 8.x release to 8.x release. If there is need to enable the signaling firewall after upgrade to 8.x release, then there are some limitations.



!!WARNING!!

After the upgrade to release 8.2, signaling firewall cannot be enabled when there is at least one SCTP multi-homed connection is enabled.

A **Cannot enable Signaling Firewall** error message displays when there is at least on SCTP multi-homed connection.

Also, if the signaling firewall is enabled after the upgrade, the SCTP multi-homed connections cannot be enabled.

A **SCTP Multi-homed connections cannot be enabled when Signaling Firewall is administratively enable** error message displays.



!!WARNING!!

After the upgrade to release 8.2, SCTP multi-homed connection cannot be enabled if signaling firewall is already enabled.

1.7.2 Network IDIH Compatibility

Upgrading an IDIH site to release 8.2.x makes it incompatible for viewing network trace data contained in remote IDIH sites that are running a prior release. The incompatibility is removed once all Network IDIH systems have been upgraded to release 8.2.x.


To view network traces for a network of IDIH systems where there is a mix of systems running release 8.2.x and systems running a prior release, Procedure 56 in Appendix H must be executed to prepare the systems running IDIH release 8.2.x to support IDIH systems running the prior release. After executing Procedure 56, network traces should be viewed only from an IDIH system running the prior IDIH release. Viewing a network trace from an IDIH 8.2.x results in a visualization that is incomplete because the IDIH 8.2.x system fails to retrieve Trace Transaction Records (TTRs) from IDIH systems running the prior IDIH release.

When all IDIH systems have been upgraded to release 8.2.x, Procedure 57 should be executed on each IDIH system where Procedure 56 was previously executed to ensure that no errors occur when viewing network traces.

1.7.3 Review Release Notes

Before starting the upgrade, it is recommended to review the Release Notes for the target release to understand the functional differences and possible traffic impacts of the upgrade.

1.7.4 Upgrade Check




!!WARNING!!

If this error displays, contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

“Post Upgrade validation failed for <server_name>. Please check server status. Cancelling the upgrade.”

ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time	Result	Result Details	Progress
25	Camaro-SO-B Server Upgrade (in Camaro_SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	completed	2018-06-22 07:07:28 EDT	2018-06-22 07:28:09 EDT	0	Server upgrade execution complete.	100%
24	Nova-SO-Sp Server Upgrade (in Camaro_SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	2018-06-22 07:07:12 EDT	2018-06-22 07:42:08 EDT	-1	Post Upgrade validation failed for Nova-SO-Sp. Please check server status. Cancelling the upgrade.	90%



CAUTION

If your deployment includes both FABR and PCA, then upgrade the DSR nodes first before upgrading the SDS nodes.

2. General Description

This document defines the step-by-step actions performed to execute an upgrade of an in-service DSR from the source release to the target release. A major upgrade advances the DSR from source release 8.0 to target release 8.5. An incremental upgrade advances the DSR from an earlier DSR 8.4 source release to a more recent 8.5 target release.

Note: With any incremental upgrade, the source and target releases must have the same value of **x**. For example, advancing a DSR from 8.4.0.0.0-84.5.0 to 8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0 is an incremental upgrade. But, advancing a DSR running 8.0 release to an 8.5 target release constitutes a major upgrade.

2.1 Supported Upgrade Paths to 8.5

The supported paths to upgrade to a DSR 8.5 target release are shown in Figure 2.

Note: DSR upgrade procedures assume the source and target releases are the GA or LA builds in the upgrade path.

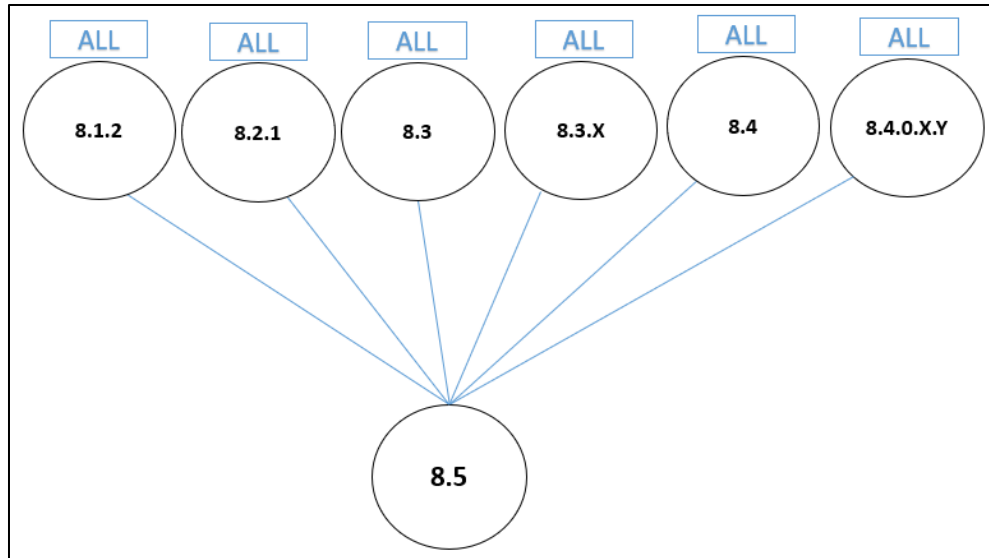


Figure 2. DSR 8.5 Supported Upgrade Paths

X = PI End Cycle

Y = Patches within the PI Cycle.

2.2 Geo-Diverse Site (Active/Standby/Spare PCA Configuration)

With a geo-diverse site, the upgrade of the SOAM active/standby servers must also include an upgrade of the spare SOAM at the geo-redundant site, in the same maintenance window.

2.3 Traffic Management During Upgrade

The upgrade of the NOAM and SOAM servers is not expected to affect traffic processing at the DA-MPs and other traffic-handling servers.

For the upgrade of the DA-MPs and IPFEs, traffic connections are disabled only for the servers being upgraded. The remaining servers continue to service traffic.



!!WARNING!! SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security change.

Oracle introduced SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) in DSR 8.0 by enabling SCTP AUTH extensions by default. SCTP AUTH extensions are required for SCTP DTLS. However, there are known impacts with SCTP AUTH extensions as covered by the CVEs referenced in [6]. It is highly recommended that customers upgrading to Release 8.5 should prepare clients before the DSR is upgraded. This ensures the DSR-to-Client SCTP connection establishes with DTLS with SCTP AUTH extensions enabled.

If customers DO NOT prepare clients to accommodate the DTLS changes, then the SCTP connections to client devices DO NOT restore after the DSR is upgraded to DSR 8.5. In the event that the SCTP connections do not re-establish after the upgrade, follow the Disable/Enable DTLS procedure in [1].

2.4 Automated Site Upgrade

There are multiple methods available for upgrading a site. The newest and most efficient way to upgrade a site is the Automated Site Upgrade feature. As the name implies, this feature upgrades an entire site (SOAMs and all C-level servers) with a minimum of user interaction. Once the upgrade is initiated, the upgrade automatically prepares the server(s), performs the upgrade, and sequences to the next server or group of servers until all servers in the site are upgraded. The server upgrades are sequenced in a manner that preserves data integrity and processing capacity.

Automated Site Upgrade can be used to upgrade the DSR servers. However, Auto Site Upgrade cannot be used to upgrade IDIH servers at a site.

An important definition with regard to a site upgrade is the **site**. For the purposes of DSR site upgrade, a **site** is defined as a SOAM server group plus all subtending servers of that server group, **regardless of physical location**. To demonstrate this definition, Figure 3 shows three physical locations, labeled **TSite 1**, **TSite 2**, and **TSite 3**. Each site contains a SOAM server group and an MP server group. Each SOAM server group has a spare SOAM that, although physically located at another site, is a member of the site that “owns” the server group. With site upgrade, SOA-Sp is upgraded with the Site 1 SOA server group, and SOB-sp is upgraded with the Site 2 SOB server group. The MP server groups are upgraded in the same maintenance window as their respective site SOAMs. These sites conform to the Topological Site definition of Table 2: Terminology.

1. With this feature, a site upgrade can be initiated on SO-A SG and all of its children (in this example, MP1 SG) using a minimum of GUI selections. The upgrade performs the following actions: Upgrade SOA-1, SOA-2, and SOA-sp.
2. Upgrade the servers in MP1 SG based on an availability setting and HA roles.
3. Immediately begin the upgrade of any other server groups which are also children of SO-A SG (not shown). These upgrades begin in parallel with step 2.

Server groups that span sites (e.g., SOAMs and SBRs) are upgraded with the server group to which the server belongs. This results in upgrading spare servers that physically reside at another site, but belong to a server group in the SOAM that is targeted for site upgrade.

Note: Automated Site Upgrade does not automatically initiate the upgrade of TSite 2 in parallel with TSite 1. However, the feature does allow the user to initiate Auto Site Upgrade of multiple sites in parallel **manually**.

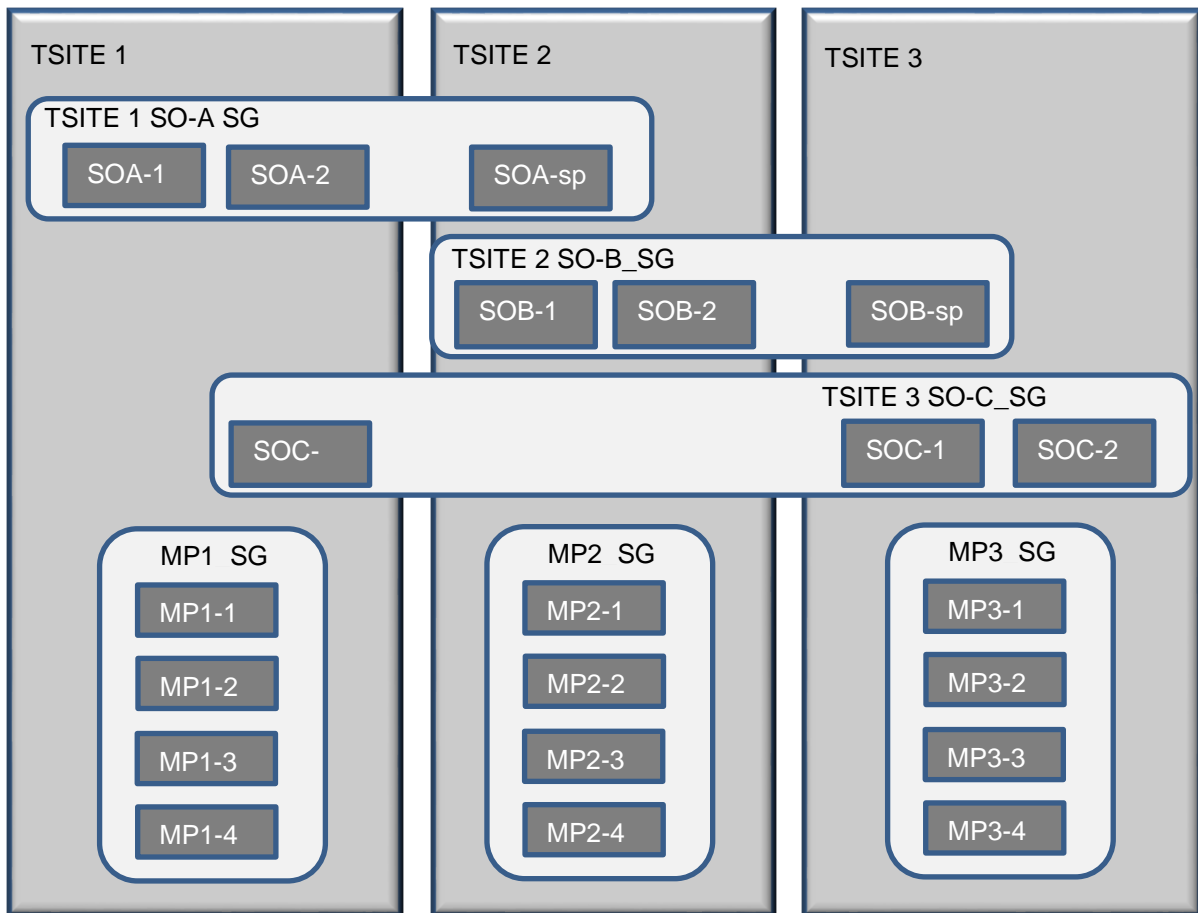


Figure 3. Upgrade Perspective of DSR "Site" Topology



CAUTION

Automated Site Upgrade and Options

Limitations in Appendix U for Automated Site Upgrade can be solved by rearranging/adding the upgrade cycles. If the user does not want to create a custom upgrade plan by rearranging/adding cycles then in that case manual upgrade section 5.3 method should be used

2.4.1 Site Upgrade Execution

With Auto Site Upgrade, the upgrade is initiated from the **Administration > Software Management > Upgrade** GUI. Upon initial entry to this screen, the user is presented with a tabbed display of the NOAM server group and SOAM sites (Figure 4). When the NOAM server group tab is selected (as shown in Figure 4), this screen is largely unchanged from the upgrade screen of previous releases. The NOAM server group servers are displayed with the usual assortment of buttons. On this screen, **Auto Upgrade** refers to Automated Server Group upgrade, not Automated Site Upgrade. The site upgrade feature becomes available once a SOAM server group tab is selected. The SOAM server group tabs correspond to the topological sites (TSites).

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter* Tasks

NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West

Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO
NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.18.0
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.18.0
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		

Figure 4. Site Upgrade – NOAM View

After selecting a SOAM site tab on the Upgrade Administration screen, the site summary screen is displayed (Figure 5). Just below the row of NOAM and SOAM tabs is a row of links related to the selected SOAM site. The first link on the site summary screen displays the Entire Site view. In the entire site view, all of the server groups for the site are displayed in table form, with each server group populating one row. An upgrade summary of the server groups is provided in the table columns:

- The Upgrade Method column shows how the server group is upgraded. The upgrade method is derived from the server group function and the bulk availability option (see Section 2.4.3 for additional details on bulk availability).
- The Server Upgrade States column groups the servers by state, indicating the number of servers in the server group that are in each state.
- The Server Application Versions column indicates the current application version, indicating the number of servers in the server group that are at each version.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter* Tasks

Ford_NO_SG Chevy_DRNO_SG Camaro_SO_SG Mustang_SO_SG Nova_SO_SG Pinto_SO_SG

Entire Site Mustang_SO_SG Mustang_MP_SG Mustang_SBR_SG1 Mustang_SBR_SG2

Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	Server Application Versions
Mustang_SO_SG	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Ready (3/3)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0 (3/3)
Mustang_SBR_SG1	SBR	Serial	Ready (3/3)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0 (3/3)
Mustang_SBR_SG2	SBR	Serial	Ready (3/3)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0 (3/3)
Mustang_MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Ready (2/2)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0 (2/2)

Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Site Upgrade Site Accept Report Report All

Figure 5. Site Upgrade - Entire Site View

For a server to be considered “Ready” for upgrade, the following conditions must hold true:

- Server has not been upgraded yet
- The FullDBParts and FullRunEnv backup files exist in the filemgmt area

A site is eligible for Automated Site Upgrade when at least one server in the site is upgrade-ready.

Click **Site Upgrade** from the **Entire Site** screen to display the Upgrade Site Initiate screen (Figure 6). The **Site Initiate** screen presents the site upgrade as a series of upgrade cycles. For the upgrade shown in Figure 6, Cycle 1 upgrades the spare and standby SOAMs in parallel.

Note: This scenario assumes default settings for the site upgrade options. These options are described in Section 2.4.3.) The specific servers to be upgraded in each cycle are identified in the **Servers** column of the **Site Initiate** display. Cycle 1 is an atomic operation, meaning that Cycle 2 cannot begin until Cycle 1 is complete. Once the spare and standby SOAMs are in **Accept or Reject** state, the upgrade sequences to Cycle 2 to upgrade the active SOAM. Cycle 2 is also atomic - Cycle 3 does not begin until Cycle 2 is complete.

Note: IPFE servers require special handling for upgrade, because IPFE servers are clustered into Target Sets and assigned an IP address, it is called Target Set Assignment (TSA). While upgrading IPFE servers, Auto Site Upgrade makes sure that there is no service outage for IPFE while upgrade is in progress, that is, IPFE servers in same TSA are not upgraded in same cycle. If IPFE server address is not configured on **IPFE -> Configuration -> Options** screen on active SOAM GUI, that IPFE server are not included in the Upgrade Cycle; therefore, are not considered for upgrade using Automated Site Upgrade.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Site Initiate]

Info*

1	Upgrade	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version
		Mustang_SO_SG	Pinto-SO-Sp - Spare	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
			Mustang-SO-B - Standby			8.1.0.0-81.20.0

2	Upgrade	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version
		Mustang_SO_SG	Mustang-SO-A - Active	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0

3	Upgrade	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version
		Mustang_MP_SG	Mustang-MP1	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
		Mustang_SBR_SG1	Pinto-SBR-3 - Spare	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
		Mustang_SBR_SG2	Pinto-SBR-6 - Spare	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0

4	Upgrade	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version
		Mustang_MP_SG	Mustang-MP2	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
		Mustang_SBR_SG1	Mustang-SBR-1 - Standby	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
		Mustang_SBR_SG2	Mustang-SBR-5 - Standby	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0

5	Upgrade	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version
		Mustang_SBR_SG1	Mustang-SBR-2 - Active	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0
		Mustang_SBR_SG2	Mustang-SBR-4 - Active	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0-81.20.0

Upgrade Settings

Upgrade ISO: Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.

Figure 6. Site Upgrade - Site Initiate Screen

Cycles 3 through 5 upgrade all of the C-level servers for the site. These cycles are **not** atomic.

In Figure 6, Cycle 3 consists of IPFE1, IPFE3, MP1, MP4, and SBR3. Because some servers can take longer to upgrade than others, there may be some overlap in Cycle 3 and Cycle 4. For example, if IPFEs 1 and 3 complete the upgrade before SBR3 is finished (all are in Cycle 3), the upgrade allows IPFEs 2

and 4 to begin, even though they are part of Cycle 4. This is to maximize Maintenance Window efficiency. The primary factor for upgrading the C-level servers is the upgrade method for the server group function (for example, bulk by HA, serial, etc.).

The site upgrade is complete when every server in the site is in the **Accept or Reject** state.

In selecting the servers that are included with each upgrade cycle, particularly the C-level, consideration is given to the server group function, the upgrade availability option, and the HA designation. Table 3 describes the server selection considerations for each server group function.

Note: The minimum availability option is a central component of the server selections for site upgrade. The effect of this option on server availability is described in detail in Section 2.4.2.

Table 3. Server Selection vs. Server Group Function

SG Function	Selection Considerations
DSR (multi-active cluster) (for example, DA-MP)	The selection of servers is based primarily on the minimum server availability option. Servers are divided equally (to the extent possible) among the number of cycles required to enforce minimum availability. For DA-MPs, an additional consideration is given to the MP Leader. The MP with the Leader designation is the last DA-MP to be upgraded to minimize leader changes ¹ .
DSR (active/standby pair) (for example, SOAM)	The SOAM upgrade method is dependent on the Site SOAM Upgrade option on the General Options page. See section 2.4.3.
SBR	SBRs are always upgraded serially, thus the primary consideration for selection is the HA designation. The upgrade order is spare – spare – standby – active.
IP Front End	IPFEs require special treatment during upgrade. One consideration for selection is the minimum server availability, but the primary consideration is traffic continuity. Regardless of minimum availability, IPFE A1 is never upgraded at the same time as IPFE A2. They are always upgraded serially. The same restriction applies to IPFE B1 and B2. If minimum availability permits, IPFE A1 can be upgraded with IPFE B1, and IPFE A2 can be upgraded with B2.

¹ In the event of a leader change while upgrades are in progress, the MP Leader may not be the last MP to be upgraded.

To initiate the site upgrade, a target ISO is selected from the ISO picklist in the **Upgrade Settings** section of the **Site Initiate** screen (Figure 6). Once the **OK** button is clicked, the upgrade starts, and control returns to the Upgrade Administration screen (Figure 7). With the **Entire Site** link selected, a summary of the upgrade status for the selected site is displayed. This summary identifies the server group(s) currently upgrading, the number of servers within each server group that are upgrading, and the number of servers that are pending upgrade. This view can be used to monitor the upgrade status of the overall site. More detailed status is available by selecting the individual server group links. The server group view shows the status of each individual server within the selected server group.

Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	Server Application Ver
SO_East	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Pending (1/2) Upgrading (1/2)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0 (2/2)
IPFE2_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)
MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Pending (2/4)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0 (4/4)
IPFE3_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)

Figure 7. Site Upgrade Monitoring

When a server group link is selected on the upgrade administration screen, the table rows are populated with the upgrade details of the individual servers within that server group (Figure 8).

Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO
SO1	Pending	Active	System OAM	OAM	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0
	Warn	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso
SO2	Success	Standby	System OAM	OAM	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0
	Err	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso

Figure 8. Server Group Upgrade Monitoring

Upon completion of a successful upgrade, every server in the site is in the **Accept** or **Reject** state. See Section 2.4.3 for a description of canceling and restarting the Automated Site Upgrade.

2.4.2 Minimum Server Availability

The concept of Minimum Server Availability plays a key role during an upgrade using Automated Site Upgrade. The goal of server availability is to ensure that at least a specified percentage of servers (of any given type) remain in service to process traffic and handle administrative functions while other servers are upgrading.

For example, if the specified minimum availability is 50% and there are eight servers of type X, then four remain in service while four upgrade. However, if there are nine server of type X, then the minimum availability requires that five remain in service while four upgrade. The minimum availability calculation automatically rounds up in the event of a non-zero fractional remainder.

To meet the needs of a wide-ranging customer base, the minimum availability percentage is a user-configurable option. The option allows for settings of 50%, 66%, and 75% minimum availability. There is also a setting of 0% for lab upgrade support. This option is described in detail in Section 3.3.

The application of minimum server availability differs for the various server group functions. For some function types, it is a straight calculation of a percentage. However, for others, minimum availability does

not apply due to overriding operational considerations. Table 4 describes the application of availability for the various server group functions.

Table 4. Site Upgrade Availability vs. Server Group Function

Server Group Function	Server Availability
DSR (multi-active cluster)	In a multi-active cluster, the availability percentage applies to all of the servers in the server group. The number of servers required to achieve minimum availability are calculated from the pool of in-service servers.
SBR	Availability percentage does not apply to SBR server groups. SBRs are upgraded in a very specific order: spare – spare – standby – active
IP Front End	IPFEs require special treatment during upgrade. The primary consideration is traffic continuity. Regardless of minimum availability, IPFE A1 is never upgraded at the same time as IPFE A2. They are always upgraded serially. The same restriction applies to IPFE B1 and B2.

When calculating the number of servers required to satisfy the minimum server availability, all servers in the server group (or server group cluster) are considered. Servers that are OOS or otherwise unable to perform their intended function, are included, as are servers that have already been upgraded. For example, consider a DA-MP server group with 10 servers; four have already been upgraded, one is OOS, and five are ready for upgrade. With a 50% minimum availability, only four of the servers that are ready for upgrade, can be upgraded in parallel. The four servers that have already been upgraded count toward the five that are needed to satisfy minimum availability. The OOS server cannot be used to satisfy minimum availability, so one of the upgrade-ready servers must remain in-service for minimum availability, thus leaving four servers to be upgraded together. Upgrading the last server would require an additional upgrade cycle.

2.4.3 Site Upgrade Options

To minimize user interactions, the automated site upgrade makes use of a pair of pre-set options to control certain aspects of the sequence. These options control how many servers remain in service while others are upgrading and are located on the **Administration > General Options** screen (Figure 9). The default settings for these options maximize the maintenance window usage by upgrading servers in parallel as much as possible.

Site Upgrade Bulk Availability *	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Site based upgrade availability for bulk upgrade of MP groups. (0 = none, 1 = 50%, 2 = 66%, 3 = 75%). ** Cannot be changed while any site upgrade is running.** [Default = 1; Range = 0-3] [A value is required.]
Site Upgrade SOAM Method *	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Site based upgrade SOAM method. (0 = serial, 1 = bulk). <u>Note:</u> Bulk upgrade will upgrade all non-active SOAM servers together. ** Cannot be changed while any site upgrade is running.** [Default = 1; Range = 0-1] [A value is required.]

Figure 9. Auto Site Upgrade General Options

The first option that affects the upgrade sequence is the **Site Upgrade SOAM Method**. This option determines the sequence in which the SOAMs are upgraded. The default value of 1 considers the OAM HA role of the SOAMs to determine the upgrade order. In this mode, all non-active SOAM servers are upgraded first (in parallel), followed by the active SOAM. This upgrade method requires at most two

upgrade cycles to upgrade all of the SOAMs, regardless of how many are present. If there are no spare SOAMs, then this setting has no effect on the SOAM upgrade.

Regardless of the SOAM upgrade method, the active SOAM is always upgraded after the standby and spare SOAMs.

The second option that affects the upgrade sequence is the **Site Upgrade Bulk Availability** setting. This setting determines the number of C-level servers that remain in service during the upgrade. The default setting of “1” equates to 50% availability, meaning that a minimum of one-half of the servers stay in service during the upgrade. The default setting is the most aggressive setting for upgrading the site, requiring the minimum number of cycles, thus the least amount of time. The settings of 66% and 75% increase the number of servers that remain in service during the upgrade.

Note: Increasing the availability percentage may increase the overall length of the upgrade.

The application of minimum server availability varies for the different types of C-level servers. For example, for a multi-active DA-MP server group, the minimum availability applies to all of the DA-MPs within the server group. This same setup applies to IPFEs as well. Table 4 defines how the Site Upgrade Bulk Availability setting on the General Options page affects the various server group function types.

The Site Upgrade General Options cannot be changed while a site upgrade is in progress. Attempting to change either option while a site upgrade is in progress results in:

```
[Error Code xxx] - Option cannot be changed because one or more automated
siteupgrades are in progress
```

2.4.4 Cancel and Restart Auto Site Upgrade

When an Auto Site Upgrade is initiated, several tasks are created to manage the upgrade of the individual server groups as well as the servers within the server groups. These tasks can be monitored and managed via the Active Task screen (**Status & Manage > Tasks > Active Tasks**).

The main site upgrade controller task is identified by the naming convention **<site_name> Site Upgrade**. In Figure 10, the main task is task ID 22. This task is controlling the server group upgrade task (task ID 23), which in turn is controlling the server upgrade task (task ID 24).

ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time	Result	Result Details	Progress
24	SO1 Server Upgrade (in SO_East Server Group Upgrade)	running	2017-01-03 17:40:27 UTC	2017-01-03 17:42:02 UTC	0	Upgraded server to new ISO	90%
23	SO_East Server Group Upgrade (in SO_East Site Upgrade)	running	2017-01-03 17:40:18 UTC	2017-01-03 17:40:27 UTC	0	Upgrade(s) started.	5%
22	SO_East Site Upgrade	running	2017-01-03 17:40:10 UTC	2017-01-03 17:40:18 UTC	0	Upgrade(s) started.	5%

Buttons: Pause, Restart, **Cancel**, Delete, Report, Delete All Completed, Delete All Exception

Figure 10. Site Upgrade Active Tasks

To cancel the site upgrade, select the site upgrade task and click **Cancel**. A screen requests confirmation of the cancel operation. The status changes from **running** to **completed**. The Results Details column updates to display **Site upgrade task cancelled by user**. All server group upgrade tasks that are under the control of the main site upgrade task immediately transition to **completed** state. However the site upgrade cancellation has no effect on the individual server upgrade tasks that are in

progress. These tasks continue until completion. Figure 11 shows the Active Task screen after a site upgrade has been canceled.

Once the site upgrade task is canceled, it cannot be restarted. However, a new site upgrade can be started via the Upgrade Administration screen.

Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks Tue Jan 03 18:13:17 2017 UTC

Filter*

ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time	Result	Result Details	Progress
30	SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_East Server Group Upgrade)	running	2017-01-03 18:11:06 UTC	2017-01-03 18:13:06 UTC	0	Upgraded server to new ISO	90%
29	SO_East Server Group Upgrade (in SO_East Site Upgrade)	completed	2017-01-03 18:10:57 UTC	2017-01-03 18:12:59 UTC	0	SG upgrade task cancelled by user.	5%
28	SO_East Site Upgrade	completed	2017-01-03 18:10:48 UTC	2017-01-03 18:12:59 UTC	0	Site upgrade task cancelled by user.	5%

Figure 11. Canceled Site Upgrade Tasks

Figure 12 is representative of a site upgrade that was canceled before the site was completely upgraded. The servers that were in progress when the upgrade was canceled continued to upgrade to the target release. These servers are now in the Accept or Reject state. The servers that were pending when the upgrade was canceled are now in the Ready state, ready to be upgraded.

To restart the upgrade, verify the **Entire Site** link is selected and click **Site Upgrade**. The Upgrade Site Initiate screen displays.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Wed Oct 12 10:10:10 2016 UTC

Filter* Tasks

Ford_NO_SG Chevy_DRNO_SG **Camaro_SO_SG** Mustang_SO_SG Nova_SO_SG Pinto_SO_SG

Entire Site Camaro_SO_SG Camaro_MP_SG Camaro_SBR_SG1 Camaro_SBR_SG2

Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	Server Application Versions
Camaro_SO_SG	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Accept or Reject (3/3)	8.2.0.0-82.6.0 (3/3)
Camaro_SBR_SG1	SBR	Serial	Accept or Reject (3/3)	8.2.0.0-82.6.0 (3/3)
Camaro_SBR_SG2	SBR	Serial	Ready (3/3)	8.1.0.0-81.20.0 (3/3)
Camaro_MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Accept or Reject (2/2)	8.2.0.0-82.6.0 (2/2)

Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Site Upgrade Site Accept Report Report All

Figure 12. Partially Upgraded Site

On the Upgrade Site Initiate screen, the servers that have not yet been upgraded are grouped into the number of cycles that are required to complete the site upgrade. For the upgrade that was canceled in Figure 11, only a single cycle is needed since the availability requirements can be met by the servers that have already been upgraded. Once an ISO is selected and **OK** is clicked, the site upgrade continues normally.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Site Initiate]

Info* ▾

Cycle	Action	Servers										
1	Upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group</th> <th>Server</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Method</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Camaro_SBR_SG2</td> <td>Nova-SBR-6 - Spare</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version	Camaro_SBR_SG2	Nova-SBR-6 - Spare	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0
Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version								
Camaro_SBR_SG2	Nova-SBR-6 - Spare	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0								
2	Upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group</th> <th>Server</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Method</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Camaro_SBR_SG2</td> <td>Camaro-SBR-4 - Standby</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version	Camaro_SBR_SG2	Camaro-SBR-4 - Standby	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0
Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version								
Camaro_SBR_SG2	Camaro-SBR-4 - Standby	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0								
3	Upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group</th> <th>Server</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Method</th> <th>Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Camaro_SBR_SG2</td> <td>Camaro-SBR-5 - Active</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version	Camaro_SBR_SG2	Camaro-SBR-5 - Active	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0
Server Group	Server	Function	Method	Version								
Camaro_SBR_SG2	Camaro-SBR-5 - Active	SBR	Serial	8.1.0.0.0-81.20.0								

Upgrade Settings

Upgrade ISO: ▾ Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.

Figure 13. Restarting Site Upgrade

2.5 Automated Server Group Upgrade

The Automated Server Group (ASG) upgrade feature allows the user to upgrade all of the servers in a server group automatically by specifying a set of controlling parameters.

The purpose of ASG is to simplify and automate segments of the DSR upgrade. The DSR has long supported the ability to select multiple servers for upgrade. In doing so however, it was incumbent on the user to determine ahead of time which servers could be upgraded in parallel, considering traffic impact. If the servers were not carefully chosen, the upgrade could adversely impact system operations.

When a server group is selected for upgrade, ASG upgrades each of the servers serially, or in parallel, or a combination of both, while enforcing minimum service availability. The number of servers in the server group that are upgraded in parallel is user selectable. The procedures in this document provide the detailed steps specifying when to use ASG, as well as the appropriate parameters that should be selected for each server group type.

ASG is the default upgrade method for most server group types associated with the DSR. However, there are some instances in which the manual upgrade method is utilized. In all cases where ASG is used, procedures for a manual upgrade are also provided.

Note: To use ASG on a server group, no servers in that server group can be already upgraded – either by ASG or manually.

DSR continues to support the parallel upgrade of server groups, including any combination of automated and manual upgrade methods.

2.5.1 Cancel and Restart Automated Server Group Upgrade

When a server group is upgraded using ASG, each server within that server group is automatically prepared for upgrade, upgraded to the target release, and returned to service on the target release. Once an ASG upgrade is initiated, the task responsible for controlling the sequencing of servers entering upgrade can be manually canceled from the **Status & Manage > Active Tasks** screen (Figure 14) if necessary. Once the task is cancelled, it cannot be restarted. However, a new ASG task can be restarted via the Upgrade Administration screen.

For example, in Figure 14, task ID #1 (SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) is an ASG task, while task ID #2 is the corresponding individual server upgrade task. When the ASG task is selected (highlighted in green), the **Cancel** button is enabled. Canceling the ASG task affects only the ASG task. It has no effect on the individual server upgrade tasks that were started by the ASG task (that is task ID #2 in Figure 14). Because the ASG task is canceled, no new server upgrades are initiated by the task.

Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks

Filter ▾

ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time
2	SO1 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	running	2015-03-02 11:44:42 EST	2015-03-02 11:54:00 EST
1	SO_SG Server Group Upgrade	running	2015-03-02 11:44:32 EST	2015-03-02 11:47:47 EST
0	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	2015-02-27 19:59:06 EST	2015-02-27 20:00:46 EST

Buttons: Pause, Restart, **Cancel**, Delete, Report, Delete All Completed, Delete All Exception

Figure 14. Active Tasks Screen

In the event that a server fails upgrade, that server automatically rolls back to the previous release in preparation for backout_restore and fault isolation. Any other servers in that server group that are in the process of upgrading continue to upgrade to completion. However, the ASG task itself is automatically cancelled and no other servers in that server group are upgraded. Cancelling the ASG task provides an opportunity for troubleshooting to correct the problem. Once the problem is corrected, the server group upgrade can be restarted by initiating a new server group upgrade on the upgrade screen.

2.5.2 Site Accept

The **Site Accept** button on the upgrade GUI (Figure 15) provides the capability to nearly simultaneously accept the upgrade of some or all servers for a given site. When the button is clicked, a subsequent screen (Figure 16) displays the servers that are ready for the Accept action.



Figure 15. Site Accept Button

A checkbox on the Upgrade Site Accept screen allows for the selective application of the Accept action. However, normal procedure calls for the Accept to be applied to all of the servers at a site only after the upgrade to the new release is stable and the back out option is no longer needed. After verifying that the information presented is accurate, clicking **OK** results in a screen that requires confirmation of the intended action. Confirming the action causes the server upgrades to be accepted.

The Accept command is issued to the site servers at a rate of approximately one server every second. The command takes approximately 10 seconds per server to complete. As the commands are completed, the server status on the Upgrade Administration screen transitions to **Backup Needed**.

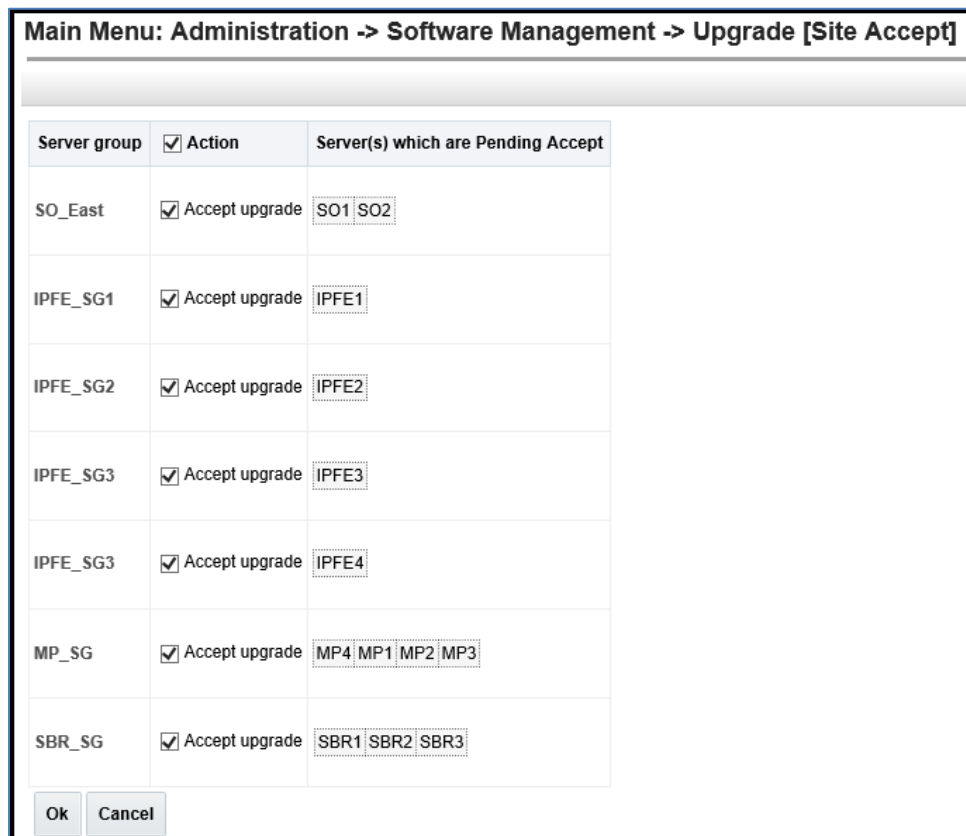


Figure 16. Site Accept Screen

3. Upgrade Planning and Pre-Upgrade Procedures

This section contains all information necessary to prepare for and execute an upgrade. The materials required to perform an upgrade are described, as are pre-upgrade procedures that should be run to ensure the system is fully ready for upgrade. Then, the actual procedures for each supported upgrade path are given.

There are overview tables throughout this document that help plan the upgrade and estimate how long it takes to perform various actions. The stated time durations for each step or group of steps **are estimates only**. Do not use the overview tables to execute any actions on the system. Only the procedures should be used when performing upgrade actions, beginning with Procedure 1.



!!WARNING!!

For vSTP-related deployments, it is not allowed to do any adding/updating/deleting of configuration until the upgrade is completed on all sites and the upgrade is accepted.

Note: While planning an upgrade, be aware that once the upgrade is started and OAM level servers are on different releases than servers on different sites, OAM level provisioning data is not replicated to sites that have not been upgraded.

Once servers at the site are upgraded, replication from OAM level serves is restored and upgraded servers start receiving provisioning data.

Read 2.4 Automated Site Upgrade for details and limitations/solutions while planning upgrade cycles.

There are some limitations with upgrading the DC server in a C-level server group that are upgraded in a group of servers, for example DA-MP, vSTP MP(s). So, while manually upgrading, make sure the DC server is not upgraded in the first upgrade cycle of the C-Level servers in its server group. Identify the DC server using Appendix N Identify the DC server.

In all cases, regardless of the number of cycles used to upgrade the DA-MP/vSTP server group, the DA-MP leader/vSTP MP leader should be the last server upgraded. By upgrading the MP leader last, the number of leader changes is minimized during the upgrade.

The DA-MP leader is designated on the active SOAM at **Diameter > Maintenance > DA-MPs > Peer DA-MP Status**, where **MP Leader = Yes**.

Also, check for the MP leader on the vSTP. This is done on the active SOAM CLI.

1. From the MMI command using the REST Client for the vSTP configuration.

The MMI user guide can be accessed by navigating to **Main Menu > MMI Guide**.

2. Use the `/vstp/mpleader` MO.

The result is the hostname of the MP leader server.

Note: If the **31149 - DB Late Write Nonactive** displays, ignore it. This alarm does not have any effect on functionality.

3.1 Required Materials and Information

The following materials and information are needed to execute an upgrade:

- Target-release application ISO image file or target-release application media.
- The capability to log into the network OAM servers with administrator privileges.

Note: All logins into the DSR NOAM servers are made using the external management VIP unless otherwise stated.

- User logins, passwords, IP addresses and other administration information. See [Table 5].

- VPN access to the customer’s network is required if that is the only method to log into the OAM servers.

3.1.1 Application ISO Image File/Media

Obtain a copy of the target release ISO image file or media. This file is necessary to perform the upgrade.

The DSR ISO image file name is in the following format (version changes from release to release):

```
DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso
```

Note: Before the execution of this upgrade procedure it is assumed that the DSR ISO image file has already been delivered to the customer’s premises. The ISO image file must reside on the local workstation used to perform the upgrade, and any user performing the upgrade must have access to the ISO image file. If the user performing the upgrade is at a remote location, it is assumed the ISO file is already available before starting the upgrade procedure.

The ISO is deployed as part of the pre-upgrade activities in Section 3.4.

3.1.2 Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses

Table 5 identifies the information that is called out in the upgrade procedures, such as server IP addresses and login credentials. For convenience, space is provided in Table 5 for recording the values, or the information can be obtained by other means. This step ensures that the necessary administration information is available before an upgrade.

Consider the sensitivity of the information recorded in this table. While all of the information in the table is required to complete the upgrade, there may be security policies in place that prevent the actual recording of this information in hard-copy form.

Table 5: Logins, Passwords, and Server IP Addresses

Item	Description	Recorded Value
Target Release	Target DSR upgrade release	
Credentials	GUI Admin Username ¹	
	GUI Admin Password	
	DSR admusr Password ²	
	DSR Root Password ²	
VPN Access Details	Customer VPN information (if needed)	

¹ The user must have administrator privileges. This means the user belongs to the **admin** group in Group Administration.

² This is the password for the server login. This is not the same login as the GUI Administrator. The admusr password is required if recovery procedures are needed. If the admusr password is not the same on all other servers, then all those servers’ admusr passwords must also be recorded; use additional space at the bottom of this table.

Item	Description	Recorded Value
NOAM	XMI VIP address ³	
	NOAM 1 XMI IP Address	
	NOAM 2 XMI IP Address	
SOAM	XMI VIP address	
	SOAM 1 XMI IP Address (Site 1)	
	SOAM 2 XMI IP Address (Site 1)	
	PCA (DSR) Spare System OAM&P server – Site 1 Spare in Site 2, XMI IP Address	
	SOAM 1 XMI IP Address (Site 2)	
	SOAM 2 XMI IP Address (Site 2)	
	PCA (DSR) Spare System OAM&P server – Site 2 Spare in Site 1, XMI IP Address	
Binding SBR Server Groups	Binding SBR SR1 Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
	Binding SBR SR2 Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
	Binding SBR SR3 Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
	Binding SBR SR4 Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
PCA MP Server Group	PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
	PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 1)	
IPFE Server Groups(For PDRA)	PCA IPFE A1 Server Group Server (Site 1)	
	PCA IPFE A 2 Server Group Server (Site 1)	
	PCA IPFE B 1 Server Group Server (Site 1)	
	PCA IPFE B 2 Server Group Server (Site 1)	
Binding SBR Server Groups	Binding SBR SR1 Server Group Servers (Site 2)	
	Binding SBR SR2 Server Group Servers (Site 2)	
	Binding SBR SR3 Server Group Servers (Site 2)	
	Binding SBR SR4 Server Group Servers (Site 2)	
PCA MP Server Group	PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 2)	
	PCA IPFE A1 Server Group Server (Site 2)	

³ All logins into the NOAM servers are made via the External Management VIP unless otherwise stated.

Item	Description	Recorded Value
IPFE Server Groups (For PCA)	PCA IPFE A 2 Server Group Server (Site 2)	
	PCA IPFE B 1 Server Group Server (Site 2)	
	PCA IPFE B 2 Server Group Server (Site 2)	
vSTP MP Server Group	vSTP MP server(s)	
Software	Target Release Number	
	ISO Image (.iso) file name	
Misc. ⁴	Miscellaneous additional data	

⁴ As instructed by Oracle CGBU Customer Service.

3.2 Plan Upgrade Maintenance Windows

This section provides a high-level checklist to aid in tracking individual server upgrades. The servers are grouped by maintenance window, and it is expected that all servers in a group can be successfully upgraded in a single maintenance window. Use this high-level checklist together with the detailed procedures that appear later in this document.

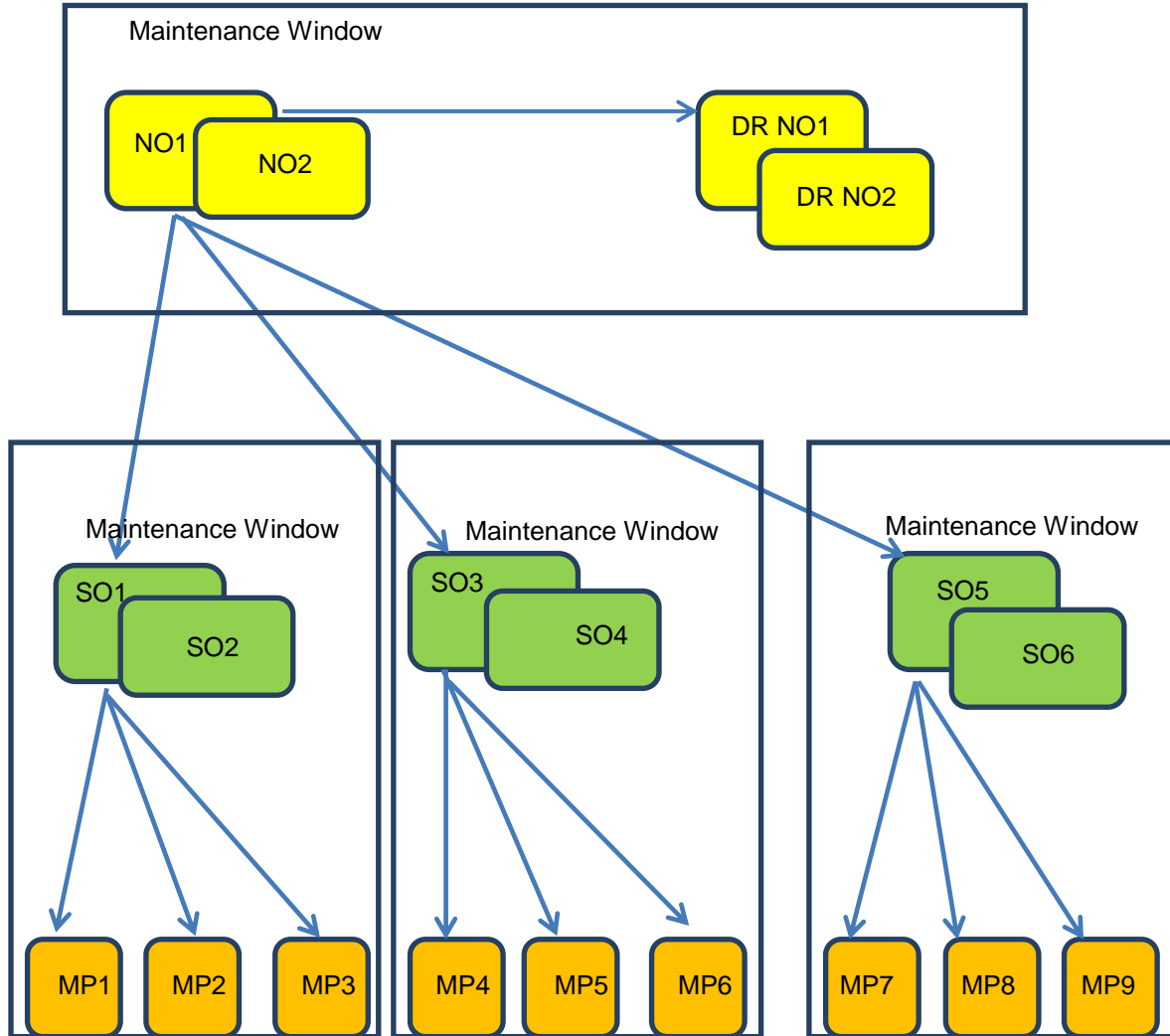



Figure 17. Upgrade Maintenance Windows for 3-Tier Upgrade



!!WARNING!! Mated SOAM sites must be upgraded in separate maintenance windows.

3.2.1 Calculating Maintenance Windows Required

The number of maintenance windows required for DSR setup and upgrade can be calculated by using the Maintenance Window Analysis Tool (see ref [3]).

This Excel spreadsheet takes setup details as input from the user and accordingly calculates the number of maintenance windows required for upgrade. The spreadsheet also specifies, in detail, which servers need to be upgraded in which maintenance window. Complete DSR upgrade maintenance window details and timings can be found in Reference [3]. Please see the instructions tab of the spreadsheet for more information and details.

3.3 Site Upgrade Methodology Selection

There are three primary methods for upgrading a DSR site:

- Auto Site Upgrade
- Auto Server Group Upgrade
- Manual upgrade

The Auto Site Upgrade is the easiest and most efficient site upgrade method; however, it is not suitable for all customers or all configurations. The Auto Server Group upgrade incorporates many of the conveniences of Auto Site Upgrade, but allows for more customer control of the upgrade process.

The Automated Site Upgrade supports 0% availability that requires the least amount of time to upgrade the sites. This can be achieved by changing the following parameters:

Site Upgrade SOAM Method setting to **0** - Changing the Site Upgrade SOAM Method setting to 0 causes the standby SOAM and the spare SOAM(s) to be upgraded serially. With this mode, the SOAM upgrade could take as many as four cycles to complete (that is, spare – spare – standby – active). If there are no spare SOAMs, then this setting has no effect on the SOAM upgrade.

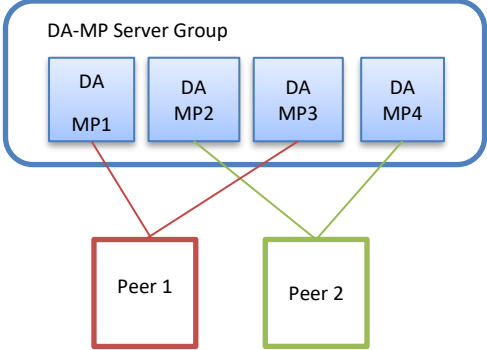
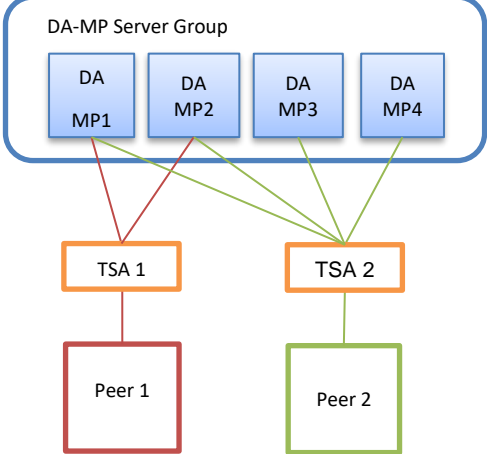
Site Upgrade Bulk Availability setting to **0** - Changing the Site Upgrade Bulk Availability setting to 0 equates to 0% availability that means no servers are required to stay in service during the upgrade. This setting requires the minimum number of cycles, thus the least amount of time. This setting allows all of the DA-MPs to be upgraded at once.

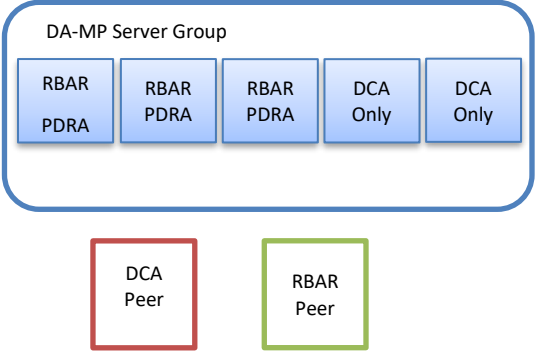
<p>Site Upgrade Bulk Availability *</p>	<p>0</p>	<p>Site based upgrade availability for bulk upgrade of MP groups. (0 = none, 1 = 50%, 2 = 66%, 3 = 75%). ** Cannot be changed while any site upgrade is running. ** [Default = 1; Range = 0-3] [A value is required.]</p>
<p>Site Upgrade SOAM Method *</p>	<p>0</p>	<p>Site based upgrade SOAM method. (0 = serial, 1 = bulk). <u>Note:</u> Bulk upgrade will upgrade all non-active SOAM servers together. ** Cannot be changed while any site upgrade is running. ** [Default = 1; Range = 0-1] [A value is required.]</p>

Again, Auto Server Group upgrade is not for all customers or all configurations. The manual upgrade method gives maximum control to the customer and can be used for all configurations. A combination of upgrade methods can be utilized to upgrade a given site to maximize efficiency with customer peace-of-mind.

Table 6 is a worksheet for determining which upgrade method meets the needs of the customer while ensuring compatibility with the DSR configuration. Upon completion of the worksheet, a recommended upgrade method is identified.

Table 6. Traffic Analysis Checklist

	Criteria	Yes	No	Notes
1.	<p>Do any of the site's DA-MPs have fixed diameter connections to any peer node, similar to this depiction?</p> 	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Automated Site Upgrade and Automated Server Group upgrade, by default, do not consider fixed peer connections when selecting servers to upgrade. It is possible that all DA-MPs servicing a given peer (such as DA-MPs 1 and 3) could be upgraded simultaneously, thereby isolating the peer. For this reason, analyze the generic upgrade plan generated by the Automated Site Upgrade and Auto Server Group Upgrade carefully to ensure all DA-MPs servicing a given peer are not upgraded simultaneously. If the generic plan has the DA-MPs upgrading simultaneously, you must rearrange the upgrade and/or add cycles as necessary to develop a suitable plan.</p> <p>If yes, proceed to section 5.2.3 to rearrange or add cycles for ASU or proceed to step 8 for a manual upgrade. If no, continue with step 2.</p>
2.	<p>If peer nodes are configured via IPFE TSAs, are there any TSAs that are not distributed across all DA-MPs, similar to this depiction?</p> 	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Automated Site Upgrade and Automated Server Group upgrade, by default, do not consider non-uniformly distributed TSAs when selecting servers to upgrade. It is possible that all DA-MPs servicing a given TSA (such as DA-MPs 1 and 2) could be upgraded simultaneously, thereby isolating the peer. For this reason, analyze the generic upgrade plan generated by the Automated Site Upgrade and Auto Server Group Upgrade carefully to ensure all DA-MPs servicing a given TSA are not upgraded simultaneously. If the generic plan has the DA-MPs upgrading simultaneously, you must rearrange the upgrade and/or add cycles as necessary to develop a suitable plan.</p> <p>If yes, proceed to section 5.2.3 to rearrange or add cycles for ASU or proceed to step 8 for a manual upgrade. If no, continue with step 3.</p>

	Criteria	Yes	No	Notes
3.	<p>Do any of the site's DA-MPs have specialized distribution of DSR features, similar to this depiction?</p>  <p>The diagram shows a 'DA-MP Server Group' containing five servers. The first three are labeled 'RBAR PDRA' and the last two are 'DCA Only'. Below the group are two separate boxes: a red box labeled 'DCA Peer' and a green box labeled 'RBAR Peer'.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Automated Site Upgrade and Automated Server Group upgrade, by default, do not consider non-uniform distribution of features when selecting servers to upgrade. It is possible that all DA-MPs hosting a given feature (such as DCA) could be upgraded simultaneously, thereby eliminating service functionality. For this reason, analyze the generic upgrade plan generated by the Automated Site Upgrade and Auto Server Group Upgrade carefully to ensure all DA-MPs hosting a given feature are not upgraded simultaneously. If the generic plan has the DA-MPs upgrading simultaneously, you must rearrange the upgrade and/or add cycles as necessary to develop a suitable plan.</p> <p>If yes, proceed to section 5.2.3 to rearrange or add cycles for ASU or proceed to step 8 for manual upgrade. If no, continue with step 4.</p>
4.	<p>Automated Site Upgrade is a candidate for this system.</p> <p>Automated Site Upgrade supports 50% minimum server availability by default. A general option allows availability percentage settings of 66% or 75%. Is 50%, 66%, or 75% server availability during upgrade acceptable to the customer?</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>In general, a higher minimum availability setting increases the time required to upgrade a site. On the other hand, a lower minimum availability may reduce operational redundancy during the upgrade. If none of the minimum availability options are acceptable, Automated Site Upgrade should not be used to upgrade the site.</p> <p>If yes, continue with step 6. If no, proceed to step 7.</p>
5.	<p>Is the customer comfortable with minimum user intervention (that is, user input) during the upgrade?</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Once initiated, Automated Site Upgrade requires no additional user input to complete the upgrade. User control is limited to canceling the site upgrade task.</p> <p>If yes, Automated Site Upgrade is the recommended upgrade method. If no, proceed to step 7.</p>
6.	<p>Automated Server Group Upgrade is a candidate for this system. Is the customer comfortable with the level of control afforded by the Automated Server Group upgrade?</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Auto Server Group upgrade allows the user to initiate the upgrade of each server group, while the individual servers within the server group upgrade automatically.</p> <p>If yes, Auto Server Group upgrade is the recommended upgrade method. If no, proceed to step 8.</p>

	Criteria	Yes	No	Notes
7.	<p>A manual upgrade affords the maximum level of control over upgrade sequencing. With this method, the upgrade of each server is individually initiated, allowing the user to control the level of parallelism and speed of the upgrade.</p> <p>Note: A site upgrade can include a combination of Automated Server Group upgrade and manual upgrades to improve efficiency. For example, SBRs can be upgraded with Automated Server Group upgrade, while the DA-MPs may be upgraded manually to control the order of upgrade for traffic continuity.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	A manual upgrade is the recommended upgrade method.

3.3.1 DA-MP Upgrade Planning

If a manual upgrade is recommended by the Table 6 worksheet, additional planning is required to ensure a successful upgrade of the DA-MP server group. A manual upgrade is typically required/recommended when the DA-MPs are configured in a way such that an upgrade could result in a traffic outage. Pre-planning the upgrade of the DA-MPs is key to avoiding an outage.

Note: If complete site upgrade is selected with 0% availability then DA-MP upgrade planning is not required.

Table 7 is an aid to laying out the sequence of the DA-MP upgrades, taking into consideration configuration and traffic continuity. **This worksheet must be completed by the customer and provided to Oracle if Oracle personnel are performing the upgrade.** It is highly recommended that the worksheet be completed for customer-driven upgrades as well.

Customer: Perform an analysis of the Diameter application and connection configurations to assess any potential traffic loss due to the DA-MP upgrade. Complete the worksheet, specifying the order in which the DA-MPs will be upgraded, and which MPs, if any, can be upgraded in parallel.

The worksheet is divided into four upgrade **Cycles**. Each cycle represents an upgrade period during which one or more servers are upgraded. Distributing the DA-MPs servers over two or more cycles, takes advantage of parallels, thereby reducing the time required to upgrade the entire server group.

To achieve 50% server availability, half of hostnames would be listed in Cycle 1 while the other half would be listed in Cycle 2, requiring two upgrade cycles. Similarly, 75% availability can be achieved by spreading the hostname over all four cycles.

In all cases, regardless of the number of cycles used to upgrade the DA-MP/vSTP server group, the DA-MP leader/vSTP MP leader should be the last server upgraded. By upgrading the MP leader last, the number of leader changes is minimized during the upgrade.

The DA-MP leader is designated on the active SOAM at **Diameter > Maintenance > DA-MPs > Peer DA-MP Status**, where **MP Leader = Yes**.

Also, check for the MP leader on the vSTP. This is done on the active SOAM CLI.

1. From the MMI command using the REST Client for the vSTP configuration.
The MMI user guide can be accessed by navigating to **Main Menu > MMI Guide**.
2. Use the **/vstp/mpleader** MO.
The result is the hostname of the MP leader server.

Note: If desired, the DA-MPs can be upgrade serially, in which case, all hostnames would be listed in cycle 1. List the DA-MPs in the order in which they will be upgraded.

Table 7. DA-MP Upgrade Planning Sheet

	Hostnames			
Upgrade Cycle 1 or Serial Upgrade				
	Hostnames			
Upgrade Cycle 2				
	Hostnames			
Upgrade Cycle 3				
	Hostnames			
Upgrade Cycle 4				
DA-MP Leader:				

3.3.2 Pre-upgrade validation to avoid Comcol inter-connectivity issue between MPs

The HA framework enhancements cause the inter-connectivity issue between the old-DC and non-DC MP nodes during upgrade scenario.

Note: This procedure provides solution to resolve the inter-connectivity issue between the old-DC and non-DC MP at the time of upgrade for the BUG 27428669.

To overcome the inter-connectivity issue:

1. Check the Designated Coordinator (DC) node in the system by using the command:

```
ssh admusr@<MP_server>
$ ha.info -d
```

Example output:


```

Node ID: HDBDBGTGCHBDRA54TK
Report Time: 01/07/2018 03:48:43.299

***
** Election Mgr: C2939 (4b2799)
***

DC: HDBDBGTGCHBDRA54TK Generation: 1 State: DC
Elected: 01/07/2018 02:14:40.822
Other Non-DC Group Members:
HDBDBGTGCHBDRA53TK
HDBDBGTGCHBDRA5BTK
HDBDBGTGCHBDRA5CTK

DC Group Candidates: <none>
    
```

2. Before starting the MP server upgrade, disable the DSR application on current DC node, using command:
 - a. On Active SOAM - Go to **Server** under **Status & Manage** option.
 - b. Disable the DSR application by selecting the MP (DC Node) and click **Stop**.
3. Select an MP to be upgraded:

Note: The MP Leader Node should be the last server to be upgraded.

 - a. Case where there existing IPFE based floating (Diameter) connections, choose an MP from TSA having more than 2 MPs.

Note: If there exists a TSA with just two MPs, and one having DC role. We should avoid using other MP (non-DC) in this TSA for upgrade at this step.
 - b. Case where there are MP based (Diameter) connection, select any MP except the MP having DC role.
4. After upgrade, one of the upgraded MP with new release takes over the new-DC role.
5. The DSR application remains disabled on the old-DC node, as performed in step 2.
6. The old-DC is upgraded in the next upgrade cycle.
7. Once the upgrade is completed, from Active SOAM - Go to **Server** under **Status & Manage** GUI screen and check if the DSR application is ENABLED on MP node (old-DC). If not then ENABLE it by restart button.

3.3.3 Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Site Upgrades)

During the first maintenance window, the NOAM servers are upgraded.

<p>Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Sites)</p> <p>Date: _____</p> <p>Note: The NE Name may be viewed from the DSR NOAM GUI under Configuration -> Network Elements.</p>	<p>Record the Site NE Name of the DSR NOAM to be upgraded during Maintenance Window 1 in the space provided below: “Check off” the associated Check Box as upgrade is completed for each server.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DR Standby NOAM (Guest): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DR Active NOAM (Guest): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Primary Standby NOAM (Guest): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Primary Active NOAM (Guest): _____</p>
--	---


3.3.4 Maintenance Window 2 and Beyond (SOAM Site Upgrades)

During Maintenance Window 2, all servers associated with the first SOAM site are upgraded. All servers associated with the second SOAM site are upgraded during Maintenance Window 3.

For DSRs configured with multiple mated-pair sites, or DSRs having multiple, distinct sites (e.g., geo-redundant PCA installations), copy and use the following form for the subsequent SOAM site upgrades.

From release 8.1, vSTP MP support is available. While upgrading from pre 8.1 releases, vSTP MP server will not be in the system. So, after major upgrade is completed. In case vSTP MP server is required, it is freshly installed on 8.1 release using reference [1]. For release 8.1, planning should be done for vSTP MP incremental upgrades.

Note: In release 8.1, there can be only one vSTP MP server in the STP server group and one server in one site. This means whenever the vSTP MP server is upgraded, there is traffic loss on that vSTP MP server.

 !!WARNING!! Mated SOAM sites must be upgraded in separate maintenance windows.	
<p>Maintenance Window</p> <p>SOAM Sites</p> <p>Date: _____</p>	<p>1. Record the site NE Name of the DSR SOAM and the MP(s) to be upgraded during Maintenance Window 2 in the space provided.</p> <p>2. Mark the associated checkbox as each server upgrade is completed.</p> <p>SOAM Site: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SOAM1 (Guest): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SOAM2 (Guest): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SOAM (Guest): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SOAM (Guest): _____</p>
	<p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP1: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP2: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP3: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP4: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP5: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP6: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP7: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP8: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP9: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP10: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP11: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP12: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP13: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP14: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP15: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP16: _____</p>

	<input type="checkbox"/> IPFE1: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE2: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE3: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE4: _____
	<p>Binding Server Group 1</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 2</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 3</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 4</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 5</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 6</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) <p>Binding Server Group 7</p> <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____

	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p>
	<p>Session Server Group 1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p>

	<input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped) Session Server Group 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)
	vSTP MP Server Group <input type="checkbox"/> vSTP MP(s): _____ (If equipped)

3.4 Prerequisite Procedures

The pre-upgrade procedures shown in the following table are executed outside a maintenance window, if desired. These steps have no effect on the live system and can save upon maintenance window time, if executed before the start of the Maintenance Window.

Table 8. Prerequisite Procedures Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title
	This Step	Cum.	
Procedure 1	0:10-0:30	0:10-0:30	Procedure 1 Required Materials Check
Procedure 2	0:15-0:30	0:25-1:00	Procedure 2 DSR ISO Administration
Procedure 3	0:20-0:30	0:55-1:30	Procedure 3 Verification of Configuration Data
Procedure 4	0:15-0:20	1:10-1:50	Procedure 4 Data Collection for Source Release 8.0 and Later
Procedure 5	0:15-0:30	1:30-3:05	Procedure 5 TKLCConfigData backup
Procedure 6	0:10-2:00	1:40-5:05	Procedure 6 Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 8.0.x and Later.

¹ ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. These factors may significantly affect total time needed, and may require the scheduling of multiple maintenance windows to complete the entire upgrade procedure. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed prior to, and outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.

3.4.1 Required Materials Check

This procedure verifies that all required materials needed to perform an upgrade have been collected and recorded.

Procedure 1. Required Materials Check


Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies all required materials are present.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify all required materials are present	Materials are listed in Section 3.1: Required Materials. Verify required materials are present.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify all administration data needed during upgrade	Double-check that all information in Section 3.2 is filled-in and accurate.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Contact My Oracle Support (MOS)	It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and inform them of plans to upgrade this system. See Appendix Z for these instructions. Note: Obtaining a new online support account can take up to 48 hours.

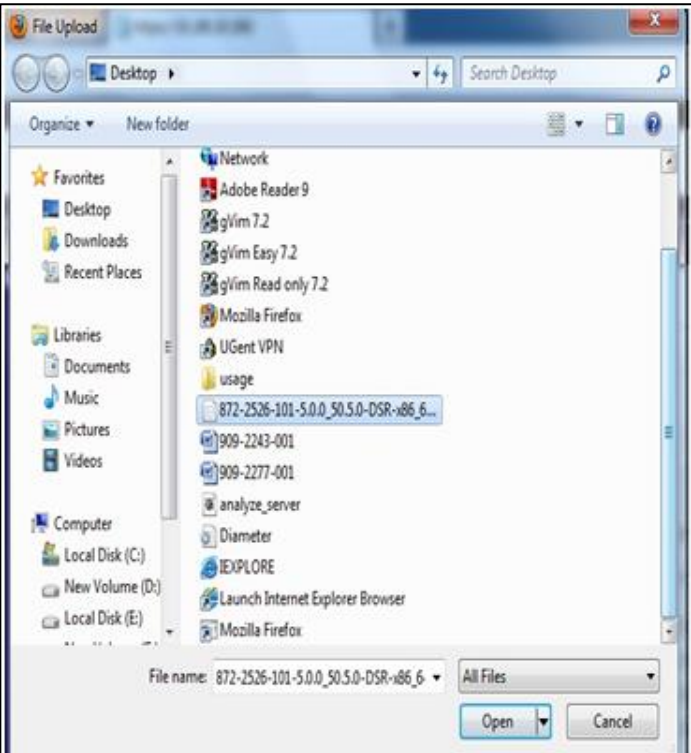

3.4.2 DSR ISO Administration

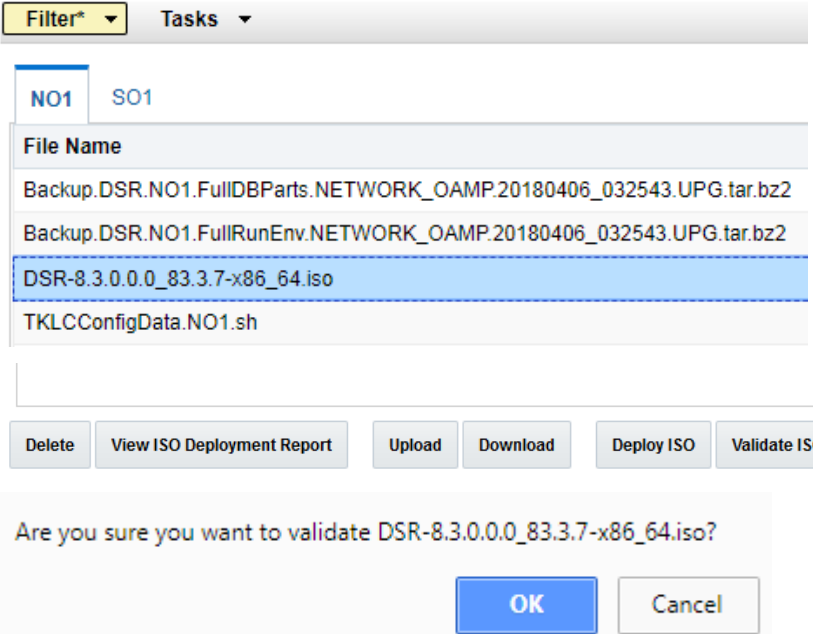
This section provides the steps to upload the new DSR ISO to the NOAMs and then transfer the ISO to all servers to be upgraded.

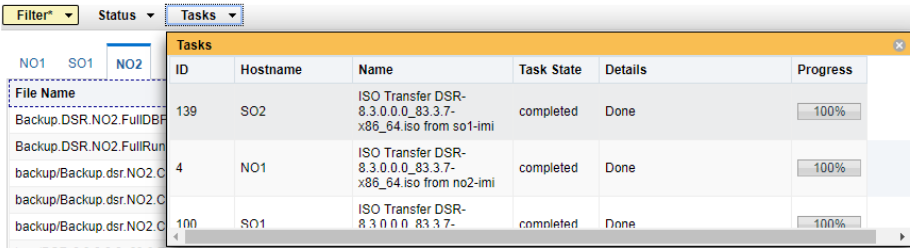
Note: ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. These factors may significantly affect total time needed and require the scheduling of multiple maintenance windows to complete the entire upgrade procedure. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed before, and outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.

Procedure 2. DSR ISO Administration

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies that ISO Administration steps have been completed. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Transfer via NOAM GUI</p>	<p>Use the NOAM GUI upload function for ISO file transfer over the network. Upload the target release ISO image file to the File Management Area of the active NOAM server:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 3. Click the active NOAM server in the network to display all files stored in the file management storage area of this server. 4. Ensure that this is actually the active NOAM server in the network by comparing the hostname in the screen title vs. the hostname in the session banner in the GUI. Verify they are the same and the status is Active in the session banner. 5. Click Upload. <p>Note: Actual screens may vary from those shown depending on the browser and browser version used.</p> 

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP</p>	<p>1. Click Browse to select the file to upload.</p> <p>2. Select the target release ISO image file and click Open.</p>  <p>3. Click Upload.</p>  <p>The ISO file begins uploading to the file management storage area. Wait for the screen to refresh and display the uploaded ISO filename in the files list. This usually takes between 2 to 10 minutes, but more if the network upload speed is slow.</p>
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM CLI: Change Permission of ISO</p>	<p>Log into the Active NOAM CLI and execute the following command:</p> <pre>sudo chmod 644 /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/<DSR_ISO_Filename></pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Using NOAM GUI, deploy ISO to all servers to be upgraded.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Click the active NOAM server tab. <p>All files stored in the file management storage area of this server display on the screen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Select the target release ISO, and click View ISO Deployment Report. 4. In the resulting report, determine if the ISO has been deployed to all servers in the system. 5. If the ISO has been deployed to all servers, this procedure is complete. Proceed to the next procedure per Table 8. 6. If the ISO has not been deployed, select the target release DSR ISO in the file list, and click Validate ISO. Click OK on the confirmation screen. 7. Verify the ISO status is valid. If the ISO is not valid, repeat this procedure beginning with step 1. If the ISO fails validation more than once, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS). 8. If the ISO is valid, select the ISO, and click Deploy ISO. Click OK on the confirmation screen. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files</p> 

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor ISO deployment</p>	<p>The deployment progress can be monitored by viewing the Tasks options on the Status & Manage > Files screen.</p>  <p>Select the target release ISO, and click View ISO Deployment Report. Verify the ISO has been deployed to all servers in the system.</p> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View]</p> <hr/> <pre> Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View] Tue Apr 10 01:35:34 2018 EDT Deployment report for DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7-x86_64.iso: Deployed on 4/4 servers. NO1: Deployed SO1: Deployed NO2: Deployed SO2: Deployed </pre>

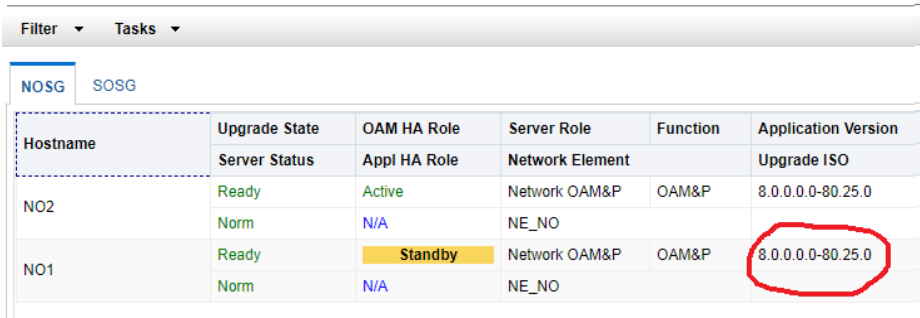
3.4.3 Data Collection — Verification of Global and Site Configuration Data

The procedures in this section are part of software upgrade preparation and are used to collect data required for network analysis, disaster recovery, and upgrade verification. Data is collected from both the active NOAM and various other servers at each site.

3.4.3.1 Verification of Configuration Data

This procedure checks the configuration data of the system and servers to ensure a successful upgrade.

Procedure 3. Verification of Configuration Data

Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
<p>This procedure checks the configuration data and server status.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																				
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify application version	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Verify the upgrade path to the target release is supported as documented in Section 2.1 (Supported Upgrade Paths). Select the NOAM Server Group and verify the Application Version. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <td></td> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0	Norm	N/A	NE_NO			NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0	Norm	N/A	NE_NO		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0																															
	Norm	N/A	NE_NO																																	
NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0																															
	Norm	N/A	NE_NO																																	
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Check if the setup has customer supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with a passphrase	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active NOAM <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> <pre>password: <enter password></pre> Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server. cd to /etc/httpd/conf.d and open the file named ssl.conf. Locate the line beginning with the phrase SSLCertificateFile. The path that follows SSLCertificateFile is the location of the Apache certificate. If the path is /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/ssl/server.crt, then the certificate is supplied by Oracle and no further action is required. Continue with the next step. If the path is anything other than /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/ssl/server.crt, then a customer-supplied Apache certificate is likely installed. Rename the certificate, but note the original certificate pathname for use in Section 4.4. 																																		

The following data collection procedures collect similar data; however, the collection method varies depending on the source release. Only one of the following procedures is to be executed for the pre-upgrade data collection. Refer to Table 9 for guidance on which procedure to use.

Table 9. Release Specific Data Collection Procedures

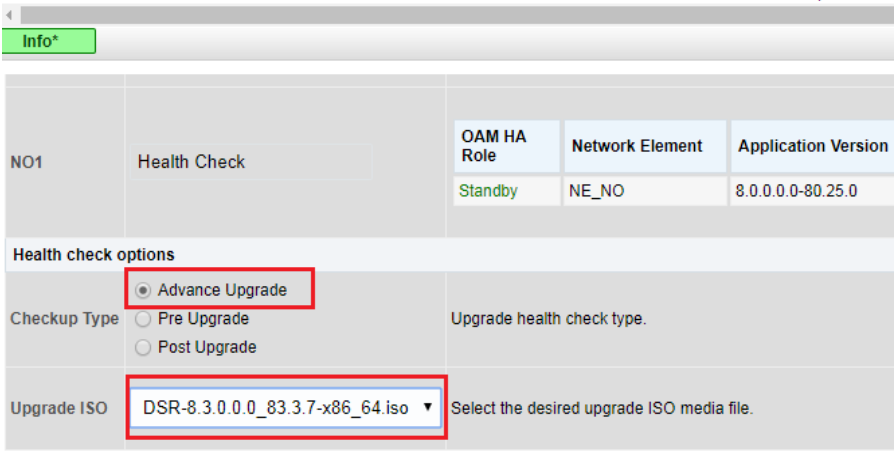
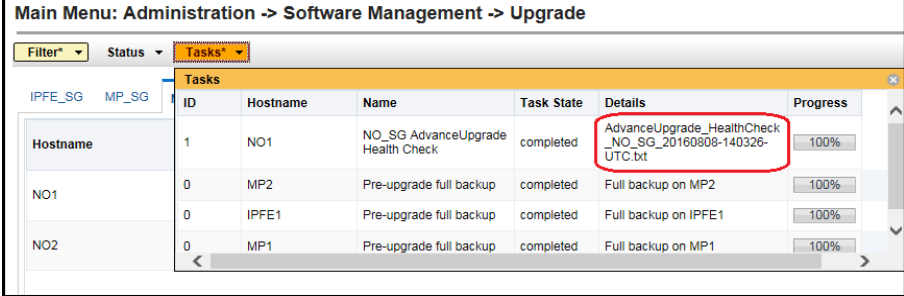
If the Source Release is	Use This Pre-Upgrade Data Collection Procedure
8.0 and later	Procedure 4

3.4.3.2 Data Collection for Source Release 8.0 and Later

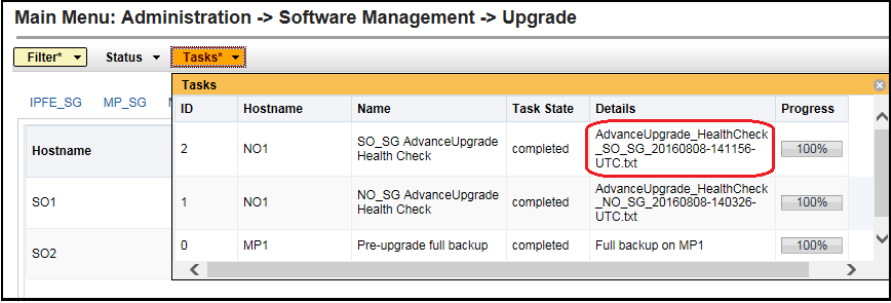
This procedure collects and archives system status data for analysis. Perform this procedure only if the source release is 8.0 and later.

Procedure 4. Data Collection for Source Release 8.0 and Later

Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
<p>This procedure retrieves and retains system status data for analysis and future use. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																				
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Run the automated health checks on the active NOAM</p>	<p>6. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>7. Select the active NOAM.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks*</p> <p>IPFE_SG MP_SG NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>8. Click Checkup.</p> <p>9. In the Health check options section, select the Advance Upgrade option.</p> <p>10. If the ISO Administration procedure has already been performed for the target ISO, select the target release ISO from the Upgrade ISO option. Otherwise, do not select an ISO.</p> <p>11. Click OK.</p> <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM			NO2	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
NO1	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																															
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																	
NO2	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																															
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																	

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Tue Apr 10 01:41</p> 
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> AdvanceUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. 4. Open the report and review the results. 
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Analyze any health check failure</p>	<p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Select the UpgradeHealthCheck.log file and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 4. Review the log for failures. <p>Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p>

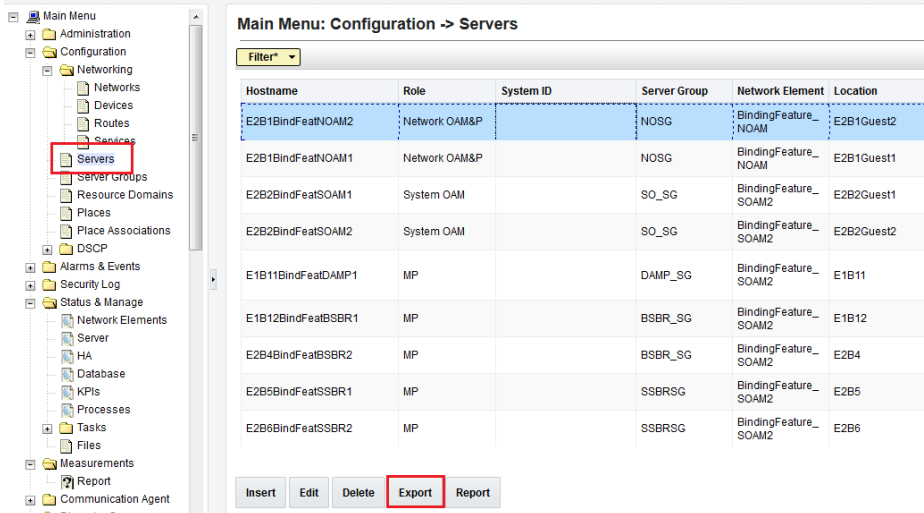
Step #	Procedure	Description																																												
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate SOAM health check</p>	<p>This procedure runs the automated health checks on the active SOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the SOAM server group tab. 3. Select the active SOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks</p> <p>IPFE_SG MP_SG NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click Checkup. 5. In the Health check options section, select the Advance Upgrade option. 6. For a major upgrade, select the target release ISO from the Upgrade ISO option. Do not select an ISO for an incremental upgrade. 7. Click OK. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Tue Apr 10 01:4</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>SO1</th> <th>Health Check</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Active</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade Upgrade health check type.</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7-x86_64.iso Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ok Cancel</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SO1	Ready	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Warn	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM			SO2	Ready	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM			SO1	Health Check	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version			Active	NE_NO	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																									
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																									
SO1	Ready	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																																									
	Warn	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																																											
SO2	Ready	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																																									
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																																											
SO1	Health Check	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version																																										
		Active	NE_NO	8.0.0.0.0-80.25.0																																										

Step #	Procedure	Description																								
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO_SG> AdvanceUpgrade Health Check. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results.  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle SOAM interface. At the top, the main menu is 'Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade'. Below this, there are tabs for 'Filter*', 'Status', and 'Tasks*'. A table titled 'Tasks' is displayed with columns: ID, Hostname, Name, Task State, Details, and Progress. The table contains three rows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160808-141156-UTC.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160808-140326-UTC.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>MP1</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Full backup on MP1</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress	2	NO1	SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check	completed	AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160808-141156-UTC.txt	100%	1	NO1	NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check	completed	AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160808-140326-UTC.txt	100%	0	MP1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP1	100%
ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress																					
2	NO1	SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check	completed	AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160808-141156-UTC.txt	100%																					
1	NO1	NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check	completed	AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160808-140326-UTC.txt	100%																					
0	MP1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP1	100%																					
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Analyze health check failure	<p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. Select the active SOAM tab. Select the UpgradeHealthCheck.log file and click View. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. Review the log for failures. <p>Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p>																								
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Analyze and plan MP upgrade sequence	<p>From the collected data, analyze system topology and plan for any DA-MP/IPFE/SBR/PCA which are out-of-service during the upgrade sequence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze system topology data gathered in Section 3.4.3.1 and steps 1. through 6. of this procedure. The Health Check reports from steps 3. and 6. can be found in Status & Manage > Files on the active SOAM. It is recommended to plan for MP upgrades by consulting My Oracle Support (MOS) to assess the impact of out-of-service MP servers. Determine the manner in which the MP servers are upgraded: Manually or Automated Server Group Upgrade. If the MPs are upgraded manually, determine the exact sequence in which MP servers are upgraded for each site. 																								

3.4.4 Back Up TKLCConfigData Files

This procedure helps to restore networking and server-related information in some cases. For example, disaster recovery when it needs to be performed on servers in case a server is lost during an upgrade.


Procedure 5. TKLCConfigData backup

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure backs up the TKLCConfigData file on all servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM GUI: Login	Use the VIP address to access the primary NOAM GUI
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Primary DSR NOAM VIP (GUI): Export configuration data for each server	<p>1. Navigate to Configuration > Servers.</p> <p>2. Select each server in the topology and click Export.</p>  <p>4. Repeat this for all servers.</p>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Primary SDS NOAM Server: Back up TKLCConfig data	<p>1. Access the primary DSR NOAM server command line using ssh or a console.</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> <p>2. Transfer the TKLCConfigData files for all servers in the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory to a remote location.</p> <pre>\$ cd /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt \$ scp TKLCConfigData.<Sever Hostname>.sh <username>@<remote-server>:<directory></pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>scp TKLCConfigData.DSRN01.sh <username>@<remote-server>:<directory></pre> <p>Remember to back up the TKLCConfig data file for all servers.</p>

3.4.5 Full Backup of DB Run Environment at Each Server

The procedures in this section are part of software upgrade preparation and are used to conduct a full backup of the run environment on each server, to be used in the event of a back out of the new software release. The backup procedure to be executed is dependent on the software release that is running on the active NOAM.

Note: Do not perform this procedure until the ISO deployment is completed to all servers in the topology. Failure to complete the ISO may disrupt ISO deployment/undeployment in the event of a partial backout (for example, backout of one site).



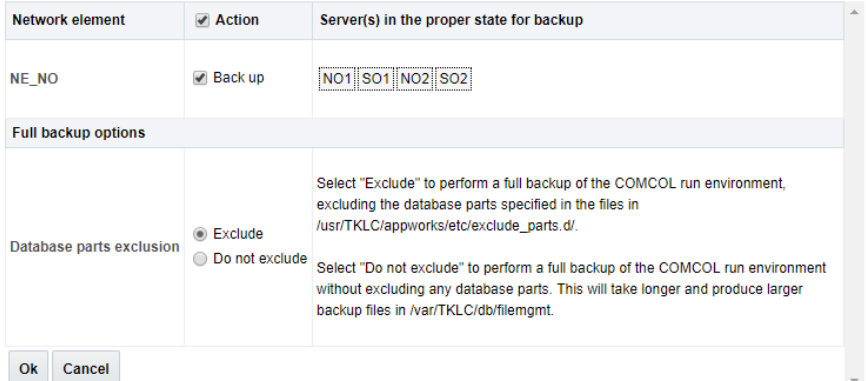
!!WARNING!! If back out is needed, any configuration changes made after the DB is backed up at each server is lost.

3.4.5.1 Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 8.0.x and Later

This procedure backs up the DB run environment when the active NOAM is on release 8.0.x and later.

Procedure 6. Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 8.0.x and Later

Step #	Procedure	Description																														
<p>This procedure (executed from the active NOAM server) conducts a full backup of the run environment on each server, so that each server has the required data to perform a backout.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Start backup of all servers</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 3. Click Backup All. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Tue Apr 10 01:52:37 2018 E</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NOSG SOSG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; font-size: small;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td rowspan="2">Network OAM&P</td> <td rowspan="2">OAM&P</td> <td rowspan="2">8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td rowspan="2">Network OAM&P</td> <td rowspan="2">OAM&P</td> <td rowspan="2">8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;"> Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All </p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0	Norm	N/A	NE_NO	NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0	Norm	N/A	NE_NO
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																											
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																											
NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																											
	Norm	N/A				NE_NO																										
NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																											
	Norm	N/A				NE_NO																										

Step #	Procedure	Description																								
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Select network elements to backup</p>	<p>The Upgrade Backup All screen displays the various network elements and identifies which servers are ready for backup.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Action column, mark the Back up checkbox for each network element. Ensure the Exclude option is selected. Click OK. <p>This initiates a full back up on each eligible server.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Backup All]</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Tue Apr 10 01:53:44 2018 EDT</p> 																								
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor backup progress</p>	<p>Select each server group tab and verify each server transitions from Backup in Progress to Ready.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter <input type="text"/> Tasks <input type="text"/></p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup In Progress Norm</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Backup In Progress Norm</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM Max HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl Max HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Backup In Progress Norm	Active N/A	Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM	OAM&P	7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0	NO2	Backup In Progress Norm	Standby N/A	Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM	OAM&P	7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM Max HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl Max HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
NO1	Backup In Progress Norm	Active N/A	Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM	OAM&P	7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0																					
NO2	Backup In Progress Norm	Standby N/A	Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM	OAM&P	7.1.1.0-0-71.31.0																					

Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	ALTERNATIVE METHOD (Optional) Server CLI: If needed, the alternative backup method can be executed on each individual server instead of using the backupAllHosts script	ALTERNATIVE: A manual backup can be executed on each server individually, rather than using the GUI method. To do this, log into each server in the site individually, and execute this command to generate a full back up on that server manually: \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/full_backup Output similar to the following indicates successful completion: Success: Full backup of COMCOL run env has completed. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullDBParts.SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullRunEnv.SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify backup files are present on each server	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 3. Click on each server tab. 4. For each server, verify the following 2 files have been created: Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2

3.4.6 IDIH Pre-Upgrade

If IDIH is a component of a Network Element, it should be upgraded only after the DSR. However, it should be noted that certain compatibility limitations may exist while the two components (DSR and IDIH) are not on the compatible release.

The IDIH upgrade procedures are provided in Appendix E and may be performed at any time after Section 3.4.6.1 has been completed.

Table 10. IDIH Upgrade Preparation Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title
	This Step	Cum.	
Procedure 7	0:15-0:30	0:15-0:30	Procedure 7

3.4.6.1 IDIH Upgrade Preparation


Procedure 7. IDIH Upgrade Preparation

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure prepares the Mediation and Application guests for upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Place the Mediation and Application OVAs in the cloud repository	Follow the hypervisor's instructions to add the Mediation and Application OVAs to the cloud repository.

3.5 Software Upgrade Execution Overview

It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) before executing this upgrade to ensure that the proper media are available for use.

Before upgrading, users must perform data collection and system health check procedures in section 3.4. This ensures the system to be upgraded is in an upgrade-ready state. Performing the system health check determines which alarms are present in the system and if an upgrade can proceed with alarms.



!!WARNING!!

If there are servers in the system which are not in a Normal state, these servers should be brought to the Normal or Application Disabled state before the upgrade process is started. The sequence of upgrade is such that servers providing support services to other servers are upgraded first.

If alarms are present on the server, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) to diagnose those alarms and determine whether they need to be addressed, or if it is safe to proceed with the upgrade.

Please read the following notes on upgrade procedures:

- All procedure completion times shown in this document are estimates. Times may vary due to differences in database size, user experience, and user preparation.
- The shaded area within response steps must be verified in order to successfully complete that step.
- Where possible, command response outputs are shown as accurately as possible. EXCEPTIONS are as follows:
 - Session banner information such as **time** and **date**.
 - System-specific configuration information such as **hardware locations**, **IP addresses** and **hostnames**.
 - ANY information marked with **XXXX** or **YYYY**. Where appropriate, instructions are provided to determine what output should be expected in place of **XXXX** or **YYYY**.
 - Aesthetic differences unrelated to functionality such as **browser attributes: window size, colors, toolbars, and button layouts**.

- After completing each step, and at each point where data is recorded from the screen, the technician performing the upgrade must initial each step. A checkbox is provided. For procedures which are executed multiple times, the checkbox can be skipped, but the technician must initial each iteration the step is executed. The space on either side of the step number can be used (margin on left side or column on right side).
- Captured data is required for future support reference if a representative is not present during the upgrade.
- Answer these questions, and record:

What is the DSR Application version to be upgraded? _____

What is the DSR Application new version to be applied? _____

Is this a Major or Incremental Upgrade? _____

Are there IPFE servers to upgrade? _____

Is SDS also deployed (co-located) at the DSR site? _____

Note: SDS does not need to be upgraded at the same time.

Is IDIH also deployed (co-located) at the DSR site? _____

3.5.1 Accepting the Upgrade

After the upgrade of ALL Servers in the topology has been completed, and following an appropriate soak time, the Post-Upgrade procedures in Section 5.4 are performed in a separate Maintenance Window to finalize the upgrade. Procedure 40 accepts the upgrade and performs a final Health Check of the system to monitor alarms and server status. Accepting the upgrade is the last step in the upgrade. Once the upgrade is accepted, the upgrade is final and cannot be backed out.

4. NOAM Upgrade Execution

NOAM UPGRADE

The NOAM upgrade section is common to all topologies. This section must be completed before executing the site upgrade procedures.

Procedures for the NOAM upgrade include steps for the upgrade of the Disaster Recovery NOAM (DR NOAM) servers also. If no DR NOAM is present in the customer deployment, then the DR NOAM-related steps can be safely ignored.

Global Provisioning is disabled before upgrading the NOAM servers. Provisioning activities at the NOAM and SOAM servers have certain limitations during the period where the NOAMs are upgraded and the sites are not yet upgraded.

The Elapsed Time mentioned in Table 11 specifies the time to upgrade the DSR application. All times are estimates.

Table 11. NOAM Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 8	0:20-0:30	0:20-0:30	Procedure 8	None


Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 9	0:05-0:10	0:25-0:55	Procedure 9	None
Procedure 10	0:01-0:05	0:26-1:00	Procedure 10	Global Provisioning Disabled
Procedure 11	0:40-1:20	1:06-2:20	Procedure 11	No Traffic Impact
Procedure 12	0:06-0:20	1:12-2:40	Procedure 12	None
Procedure 13	0:05-0:10	1:17-2:50	Procedure 13	Global Provisioning Enabled

4.1 NOAM Pre-Upgrade Checks and Backup

The procedures in this section perform health checks and backups to prepare the NOAM NE for upgrade. These procedures must be executed on the active NOAM.

Note: These procedures may be executed outside of the maintenance window, but should be executed within 6 to 8 hours before Procedure 11.

Note: If syscheck fails on any server during pre-upgrade checks or in early checks stating that **cpu: FAILURE:: No record in alarm table for FAILURE!**, see Procedure 68.



!!WARNING!!

Increase the Maximum Number of Open Files

As the number of servers in the topology grows, so does the need for additional files to handle merging data to the NOAM. This procedure checks the number of files currently in use, and, if necessary, increases the maximum number of open files.

See Appendix B to increase the maximum number of open files.

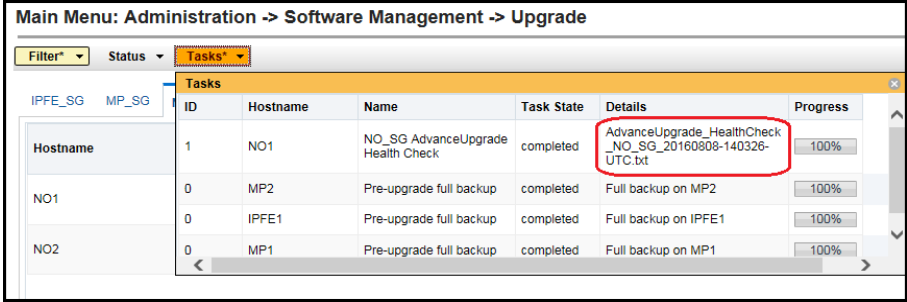
4.1.1 NOAM Health Check for Source Release 8.0 and Later

This procedure is used to determine the health and status of the network and servers when the NOAM is on source release 8.0 or later. This procedure must be executed on the active NOAM.

Procedure 8. NOAM Health Check for Source Release 8.0 or Later

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs a Health Check of the system before upgrading the NOAMs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade DSR ISO has been transferred to all servers</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. Select the target release DSR ISO and click View ISO Deployment Report. Review the report to ensure the ISO is deployed to all servers in the topology. <p>Sample report:</p> <pre>Deployment report for DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso: Deployed on 7/7 servers. NO1: Deployed NO2: Deployed SO1: Deployed SO2: Deployed MP1: Deployed MP2: Deployed IPFE: Deployed</pre>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Export and archive the Diameter configuration data</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Diameter Common > Export. Capture and archive the Diameter data by selecting the ALL option for the Export Application. Verify the requested data is exported by clicking Tasks at the top of the screen. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files and download all the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the active NOAM to the client machine.

Step #	Procedure	Description																																														
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate NOAM health checks</p>	<p>This procedure runs the automated pre-upgrade health checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the active NOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* <input type="button" value="Tasks*"/></p> <p>IPFE_SG MP_SG NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <td></td> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Click Checkup. 4. Under Health Check options, select the Pre Upgrade option. 5. From the Upgrade ISO option, select the target release ISO. 6. Click OK. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <p>Info*</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NSX-NO-02</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>NSX_NOAM_NE</td> <td>8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.2.0.0.0_82.8.1-x86_64.iso</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM			NO2	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM			Hostname	Action	Status	NSX-NO-02	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>NSX_NOAM_NE</td> <td>8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version	Active	NSX_NOAM_NE	8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																											
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																											
NO1	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																																											
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																													
NO2	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.8.1																																											
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																													
Hostname	Action	Status																																														
NSX-NO-02	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>NSX_NOAM_NE</td> <td>8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version	Active	NSX_NOAM_NE	8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1																																								
OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version																																														
Active	NSX_NOAM_NE	8.2.0.0.0-82.8.1																																														

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress for completion</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> PreUpgrade Health Check. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results. 
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Analyze health check results</p>	<p>Analyze health check report for failures. If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, analyze the Health Check logs to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. Select the AdvancedUpgrade_HealthCheck_<NOAM SG>_<TIMESTAMP>.txt file and click View. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

4.1.2 NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

This procedure takes a backup of the NOAM servers just prior to the upgrade.

Procedure 9. NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure takes a backup of the NOAM.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Backup all global configuration databases for NOAM</p> <p>Important: Required for disaster recovery</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database to return to the Database Status screen. 7. Click to highlight the active NOAM server and click Backup. <p>Note: Backup is only enabled when the active server is selected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Mark the Configuration checkbox. 9. Select the desired compression type. Retain the default selection unless there is a specific reason or direction to change it. 10. Enter Comments (optional). 11. Click OK. <p>Note: On the Status & Manage >Database screen, the active NOAM server displays the word Active in the OAM Max HA Role column.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Download/Save database files backups for NOAM</p> <p>Important: Required for disaster recovery</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Click on the active NOAM server tab. 3. Select the configuration database backup file and click Download. 4. If a confirmation window displays, click Save. 5. If the Choose File screen displays, select a destination folder on the local workstation to store the backup file. Click Save. 6. If a Download Complete confirmation displays, click Close.

4.2 Disable Global Provisioning

The following procedure disables provisioning on the NOAM. This step ensures no changes are made to the database while the NOAMs are upgraded. Provisioning is re-enabled once the NOAM upgrade is complete.

Procedure 10. Disable Global Provisioning

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure disables provisioning for the NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Disable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Disable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning; a yellow information box should also display at the top of the view screen that states: [Warning Code 002] – Global provisioning has been manually disabled. The active NOAM server has the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)

4.3 NOAM Upgrade

This procedure is used to upgrade the NOAM and DR NOAM servers.

Procedure 11. NOAM Upgrade

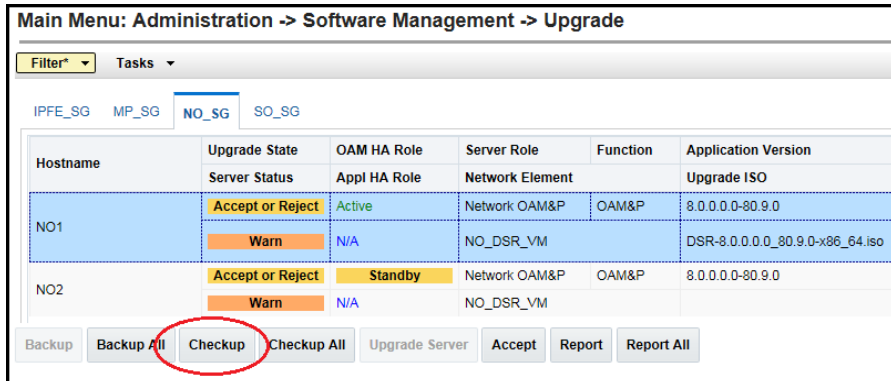
Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades the NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade primary DSR standby NOAM	<p>1. Upgrade the primary DSR standby NOAM server using Upgrade Single Server procedure:</p> <p>If the active NOAM is on DSR 8.x: Execute Appendix C -- Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x.</p> <p>Otherwise: Execute Error! Reference source not found. - Error! Reference source not found..</p> <p>2. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C or Error! Reference source not found., return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> <p>The active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) Alarm ID = 31226 (HA Availability Status Degraded) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Path Down) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed)</p> <p>If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade second DSR NOAM	<p>Upgrade the second DSR NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure: Execute Appendix C -- Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade standby DR NOAM	<p>Upgrade the standby DR NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure: Execute Appendix C -- Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p>

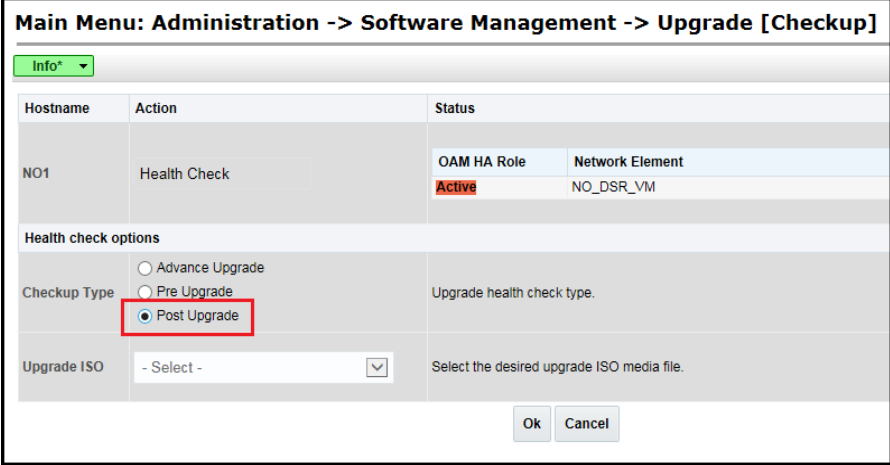
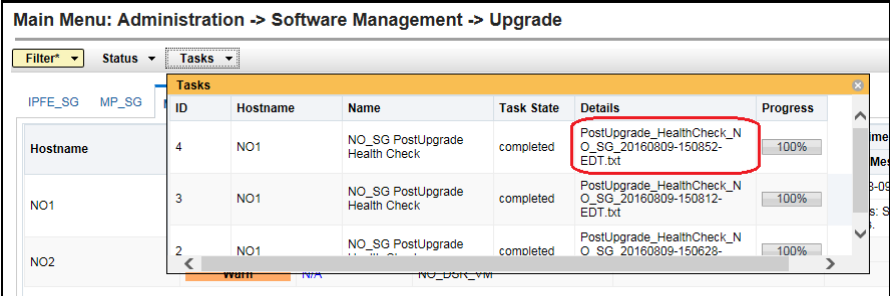
Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade active DR NOAM	Upgrade the active DR NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure: Execute Appendix C -- Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 11.

4.4 Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status

This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, and the health and status of the network and servers.


Procedure 12. Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
<p>This procedure verifies post upgrade status for NOAM upgrade. Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																						
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Post-upgrade health checks	<p>This procedure runs the automated post-upgrade health checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the active NOAM.  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade' interface. It features a 'Filter*' dropdown and 'Tasks' dropdown. Below are tabs for 'IPFE_SG', 'MP_SG', 'NO_SG', and 'SO_SG'. A table displays server details:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th colspan="3">Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.9.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0-80.9.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.9.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Backup', 'Backup All', 'Checkup', 'Checkup All', 'Upgrade Server', 'Accept', 'Report', and 'Report All'. The 'Checkup' button is circled in red.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Checkup. Under Health check options, select the Post Upgrade option. Click OK. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Upgrade ISO			NO1	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.9.0		Warn	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0-80.9.0-x86_64.iso	NO2	Accept or Reject	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.9.0		Warn	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Upgrade ISO																																			
NO1	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.9.0																																	
	Warn	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0-80.9.0-x86_64.iso																																	
NO2	Accept or Reject	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.9.0																																	
	Warn	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> 
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> PostUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the health check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. 4. Open the report and review the results. 
<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Analyze health check failures</p>	<p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Select the file named UpgradeHealthCheck.log and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 4. Review the log for failures. <p>Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p>

4.5 Allow Provisioning (Post NOAM Upgrade)

The following procedure enables Global Provisioning after the NOAM upgrade.

	<h1 style="color: red; margin: 0;">CAUTION</h1>	<p>Any network-wide provisioning changes made at the NOAM site before the upgrade is accepted are lost if the upgrade is backed out.</p>
---	---	--

Procedure 13. Allow Provisioning (Post NOAM Upgrade)

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure enables provisioning for the NOAM and DR NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning.
<p>Note: After enabling provisioning at the NOAM, the SOAM GUI(s) may display a banner indicating that global provisioning is disabled. This message can be ignored – global provisioning is enabled. This is a display issue only and is corrected when the SOAMs are upgraded.</p>		
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Add new network element (if required)	<p>Perform this step only if the addition of a new network element is required at this time.</p> <p>If a new network element is to be added, start this procedure now. The addition of the new network element requires a separate maintenance window. The servers in the new network element must be installed with the same DSR release as that of the upgraded NOAM(s). Follow the release specific installation procedures from reference [1] to install the software on the new servers and add the new network element under the existing NOAM(s).</p> <p>Skip the sections of the installation procedure related to installing and configuring the NOAM(s). This adds a new DSR SOAM site under the existing NOAM(s).</p>

5. Site Upgrade Execution

This section contains the procedures for upgrading an entire site - starting with the pre-upgrade activities, upgrading the SOAMs and C-level servers, and finishing with verifying the upgrade.

To maximize the Maintenance Window usage, the procedures in this section make full use of the parallel upgrade capabilities of the DSR, while ensuring traffic continuity and redundancy to the fullest extent possible.



CAUTION

Read 2.4 Automated Site Upgrade for details and limitations/solutions while doing planning of upgrade cycles.

The Automated Site Upgrade procedures are in section 5.2: Automated Site Upgrade. Use the procedures in this section if the Automated Site Upgrade was recommended in section 3.3 Site Upgrade Methodology Selection. See section 5.2.3 for more details for rearranging cycles, if needed.

The manual site upgrade procedures are in section 5.3. Use the procedures in this section if the manual upgrade was recommended in section 3.3 Site Upgrade Methodology Selection.

5.1 Site Pre-Upgrade Activities

SITE UPGRADE: Pre-Upgrade Activities

Use this section to execute pre-upgrade planning, pre-upgrade backups, pre-upgrade health checks, and to disable site provisioning.

This section contains the procedures for site upgrade planning, pre-upgrade backups, health checks, and disabling site provisioning.

Table 12 shows the procedures to be executed for the site upgrade, along with the estimated time to complete each step. Use Table 12 as a guide for determining the order in which the procedures are to be executed.

Table 12. Site Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 14	0:10-0:20	0:10-0:20	Procedure 14 Site Pre-Upgrade Backups	None
Procedure 15	0:05-0:10	0:15-0:30	Procedure 15 Site Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 8.0 and Later	None None
Procedure 16	0:03	0:18-0:38	Procedure 16 Site Upgrade Options Check	None
Procedure 17	0:01-0:05	0:19-0:48	Procedure 17 Disable Site Provisioning	Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact
Procedure 18	0:05-0:10	0:24-0:58	Procedure 18 Site Upgrade Pre-Checks	None

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 19	2:40-4:00	3:04-4:58	Procedure 19 Automated Site Upgrade	Traffic is not serviced by servers that are actively upgrading.
Procedure 20	0:02	3:06-5:00	Procedure 20 Rearrangement of upgrade cycles for Automated Site Upgrade	Site Provisioning Enabled, No Traffic Impact
Procedure 21	0:10-0:15	3:26-5:15	Procedure 21 SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks	None

5.1.1 Site Pre-Upgrade Backups

This procedure is non-intrusive and is used to perform a backup of all servers associated with the SOAM Site(s) being upgraded. It is recommended that this procedure be executed no earlier than 36 hours prior to the start of the upgrade.

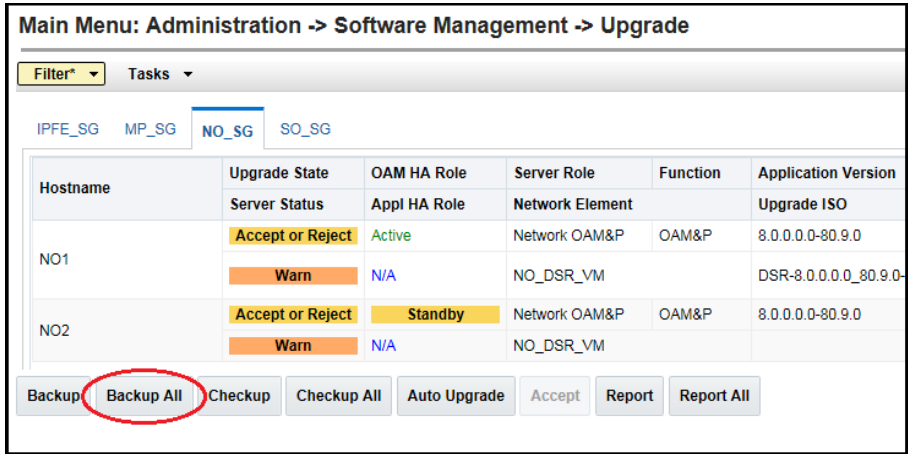
Since this backup is to be used in the event of disaster recovery, any site configuration changes made after this backup should be recorded and re-entered after the disaster recovery.

Procedure 14 is an alternate procedure that can be used to backup a site using the command line. **Procedure 14 should only be used by direction of My Oracle Support (MOS).**

Procedure 14. Site Pre-Upgrade Backups

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active SOAM VIP: Back up site configuration data</p> <p>Important: Required for disaster recovery</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database to return to the Database Status screen. Click to highlight the Active SOAM server, and click Backup. <p>Note: Backup is only enabled when the active server is selected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Mark the Configuration checkbox. Select the desired compression type. Retain the default selection unless there is a specific reason or direction to change it. Enter Comments (optional). Click OK. <p>Note: The active SOAM can be determined by navigating to Status & Manage > HA and noting which server is currently assigned the VIP in the Active VIPs field. The server having VIP assigned is the Active.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Download/Save database backup files Important: Required for disaster recovery	1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files . 2. Click on the active SOAM server tab. 3. Select the configuration database backup file and click Download . 4. If a confirmation window displays, click Save . 5. If the Choose File window displays, select a destination folder on the local workstation to store the backup file. Click Save . 6. If a download complete confirmation displays, click Close .
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade/Backup DB run environment for site	1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade . 3. Click Backup All .



Step #	Procedure	Description																																										
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Set backup parameters</p>	<p>The Upgrade Backup All screen displays the various network elements and identifies which servers are ready for backup.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Action column, mark the Back up checkbox for each network element. Verify the NOAM server group checkbox is NOT marked. <p>Note: Backing up the NOAM servers at this point overwrites the pre-upgrade backup files needed for backing out the target release. Do NOT back up the NOAM servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Full Backup Options section, verify the Exclude option is selected. Click OK. <p>This initiates a full backup on each eligible server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Backup All]</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Network element</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Action</th> <th style="width: 50%;">Server(s) in the proper state for backup</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>None</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Full backup options</p> <p>Database parts exclusion</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Exclude <input type="radio"/> Do not exclude</p> <p>Select "Exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run environment, in /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/exclude_parts.d. Select "Do not exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run environment and produce larger backup files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div>	Network element	Action	Server(s) in the proper state for backup	NO_DSR_VM	<input type="checkbox"/> Back up	None	SO1_DSR_VM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up	SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE1																																	
Network element	Action	Server(s) in the proper state for backup																																										
NO_DSR_VM	<input type="checkbox"/> Back up	None																																										
SO1_DSR_VM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up	SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE1																																										
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor tasks for backup completion</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade screen, click the Tasks option. Monitor the progress of the backups until the network element(s) selected in step 4 are complete. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks*</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="7">Tasks</th> </tr> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>SO2</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Full backup on SO2</td> <td><div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div></td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>MP2</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Full backup on MP2</td> <td><div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div></td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>SO1</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Full backup on SO1</td> <td><div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div></td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>15</td> <td>MP1</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Full backup on MP1</td> <td><div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div></td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Tasks							ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress		2	SO2	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on SO2	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%	10	MP2	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP2	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%	10	SO1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on SO1	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%	15	MP1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP1	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%
Tasks																																												
ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress																																							
2	SO2	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on SO2	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%																																						
10	MP2	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP2	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%																																						
10	SO1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on SO1	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%																																						
15	MP1	Pre-upgrade full backup	completed	Full backup on MP1	<div style="width: 100%; height: 10px; background-color: #ccc;"></div>	100%																																						

Step #	Procedure	Description
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify backup files are present on each server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM or SOAM GUI. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 3. Click on each server tab. 4. For each server, verify the following 2 files have been created: Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 5. Repeat sub-steps 1 through 4 for each site being upgraded.

5.1.2 Site Pre-Upgrade Health Checks

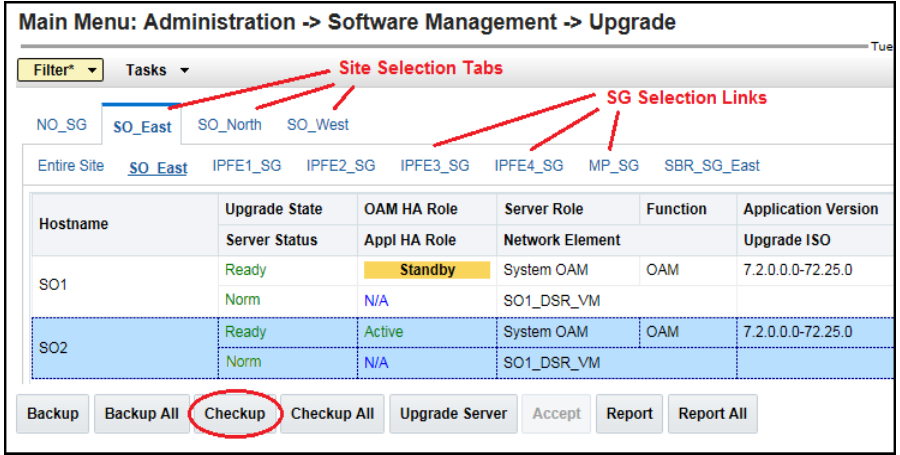
This section provides procedures to verify the health of the SOAM site prior to upgrade. Procedure 15 is the primary procedure to be executed when the active NOAM is on release 8.0 and later. Alternate release-specific procedures are also provided, to be used as directed.

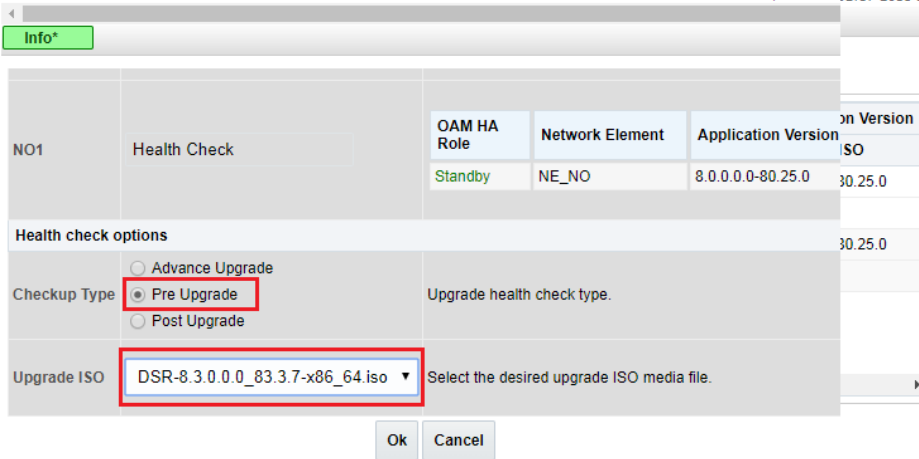
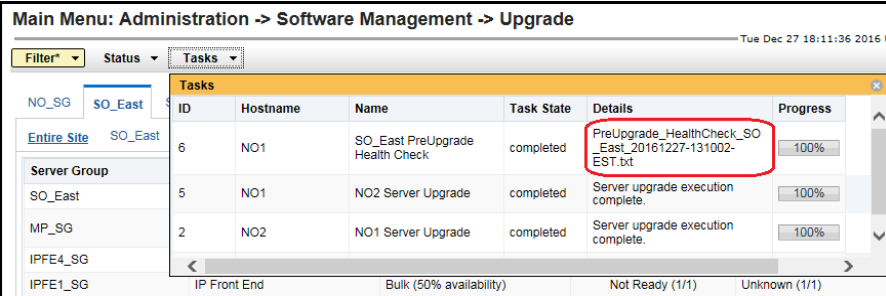
5.1.2.1 Site Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 8.0 and Later

This procedure is used when the NOAMs are on release 8.0 and later. The procedure is non-intrusive and performs a health check of the site prior to upgrading.

Note: If syscheck fails on any server during pre-upgrade checks or in early checks stating that **cpu: FAILURE:: No record in alarm table for FAILURE!**, see Procedure 68 Workaround to Resolve syscheck Error for CPU Failure.

Procedure 15. Site Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 8.0 and Later

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs a health check before upgrading the SOAMs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Run site health checks (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the SOAM on which health checks are run.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the tab of the site to be upgraded. 3. Select the SOAM server group link. 4. Select the active SOAM. 5. Click Checkup. 

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Run site health checks (part 2)</p>	<p>Initiate the health checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Checkup. 2. In the Health check options section, select the Pre Upgrade option. 3. Use the Upgrade ISO option to select the target release ISO. 4. Click OK to initiate the health check. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade Administration screen.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a configuration window for a health check. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: "Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade". Below that, a table lists server details for "NO1", including "Health Check", "OAM HA Role" (Standby), "Network Element" (NE_NO), and "Application Version" (8.0.0.0-80.25.0). The "Health check options" section has three radio buttons: "Advance Upgrade", "Pre Upgrade" (which is selected and circled in red), and "Post Upgrade". Below this, the "Upgrade ISO" dropdown menu is open, showing "DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7-x86_64.iso" selected and circled in red. At the bottom, there are "Ok" and "Cancel" buttons.</p>
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress for completion</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO Server Group> PreUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. 4. Open the report and review the results. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a "Tasks" window with a table of task details. The table has columns for "ID", "Hostname", "Name", "Task State", "Details", and "Progress". One task is highlighted: ID 6, Hostname NO1, Name "SO_East PreUpgrade Health Check", Task State "completed", and Details "PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_East_20161227-131002-EST.bt" (circled in red). Other tasks include "NO2 Server Upgrade" and "NO1 Server Upgrade", both also in a "completed" state. At the bottom, there are summary statistics: "IP Front End", "Bulk (50% availability)", "Not Ready (1/1)", and "Unknown (1/1)".</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Analyze any health check failures	<p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, the Health Check logs must be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed. The Health Check log is located in the File Management area of the active SOAM. Select the active SOAM tab to see the Health Check log.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Select the active SOAM tab. 3. Select the UpgradeHealthCheck.log file and click View. 4. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 5. Review the log for failures. <p>Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p> <p>If the health check log contains the Unable to execute Health Check on <Active SOAM hostname> message, perform an alternate health check procedure as follows:</p> <p>If the active SOAM release is 8.0/8.1: Execute SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks.</p>
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Export and archive the Diameter configuration data on active SOAM GUI	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Diameter Common > Export. 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by selecting the ALL option for the Export Application. 3. Click OK. 4. Verify the requested data is exported by clicking Tasks at the top of the screen. 5. Click File Management to view the files available for download. Download all of the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the active NOAM to the client machine.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Capture data for each SOAM site	Repeat this procedure for each configured SOAM site to be upgraded.

5.1.3 Site Upgrade Options Check

Automated Site Upgrade provides user-configurable options that control certain upgrade behaviors. These options are found on the active NOAM's **Administration > General Options** screen and are described in detail in Section 2.4.3. Before initiating a site upgrade, review these options to verify the current settings are correct, or to modify the settings to meet customer requirements/preferences.

This procedure is applicable only to Auto Site Upgrade. The options have no effect on manual upgrades or Automated Server Group upgrades.

Procedure 16. Site Upgrade Options Check

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure is used to review the site upgrade options and make changes as necessary. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View auto site upgrade options	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI. 2. Navigate to Administration > General Options. 3. Scroll down to the Site Upgrade Bulk Availability option. 4. Review the existing value of this option and determine if changes are needed. If the option is changed, click OK to save the change. 5. Scroll down to the Site Upgrade SOAM Method option. 6. Review the existing value of this option and determine if changes are needed. If the option is changed, click OK to save the change.

5.1.4 Disable Site Provisioning

This procedure disables Site Provisioning in preparation for upgrading the site.




!!WARNING!!

This procedure may only be performed in the maintenance window immediately before the start of the SOAM site upgrade.

Procedure 17. Disable Site Provisioning

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure disables provisioning for the SOAM.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Disable site provisioning	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI of the site to be upgraded. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Disable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box also displays at the top of the view screen that states: [Warning Code 004] – Site provisioning has been manually disabled. The active SOAM server has the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each SOAM site	Repeat this procedure for each configured SOAM site to be upgraded.

5.2 Automated Site Upgrade



!!WARNING!!

The following procedures must be completed before the start of automated site upgrade: Procedure 14; Procedure 15; Procedure 16; Procedure 17; and Procedure 18.

Read 2.4 Automated Site Upgrade for details.

Upgrade cycles are created when using the Automated Site Upgrade. Limitations in Appendix O for Automated Site Upgrade can be solved by rearranging/adding the upgrade cycles. If the user does not want to create a custom upgrade plan by rearranging/adding cycles, then manually upgrade using section 5.3.

5.2.1 Site Upgrade Pre-Checks

This procedure verifies that the system is prepared for Automated Site Upgrade.

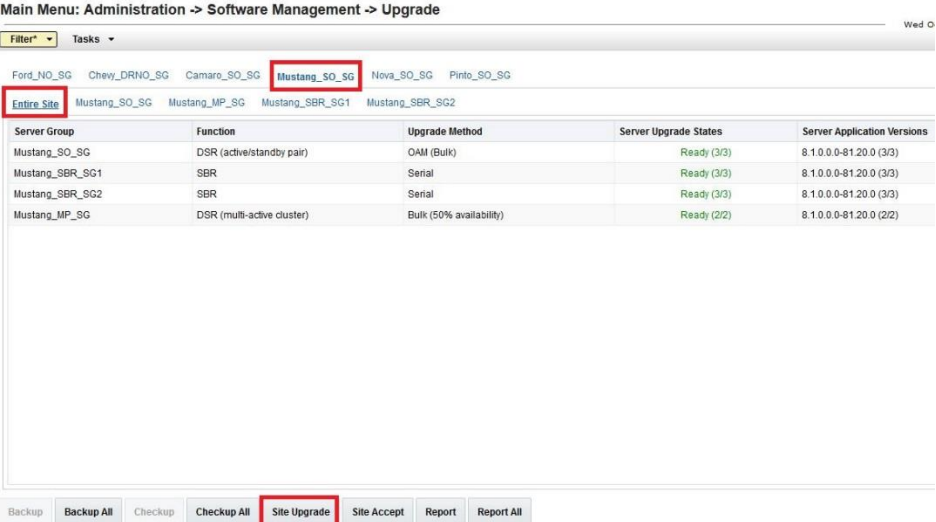
Procedure 18. Site Upgrade Pre-Checks

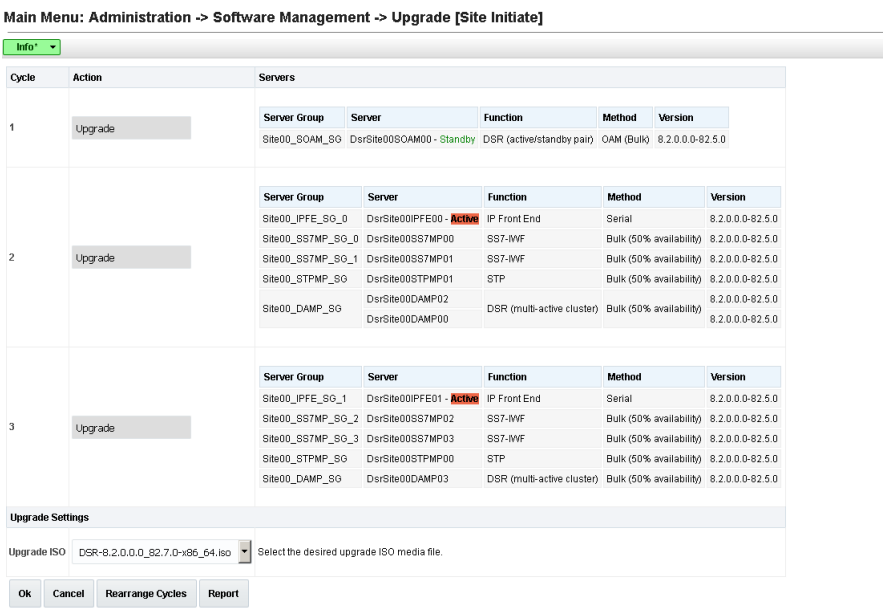
Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, in preparation for upgrading the site.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: View KPIs to verify traffic status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > KPIs. 3. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Verify Site Provisioning is disabled	<p>Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 17.</p> <p>In the GUI status bar, where it says Connected using ..., check for the message Site Provisioning disabled.</p> <p>If the message is present, continue with the next procedure per Table 12; otherwise, execute Procedure 17.</p>

5.2.2 Initiate Automated Site Upgrade

This procedure initiates the Automated Site Upgrade sequence.

Procedure 19. Automated Site Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades an entire site using the Automated Site Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Review site upgrade plan and site readiness	<p>Review the site upgrade plan created in Section 3.2. This step verifies that the servers and server groups to be upgraded are in the proper state.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site to be upgraded. Verify the Entire Site link is selected. <p>The Entire Site screen provides a summary of the server states and upgrade readiness. More detailed server status is available by selecting a specific server group link.</p>  <p>Note: The Site Upgrade option can be used to upgrade an entire site, or a subset of site elements. The servers within the site may be in various states of readiness, including Accept or Reject, Ready, Backup Needed, Failed, or Not Ready. Only the servers in the Ready or Failed state are upgrade eligible.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Initiate site upgrade	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Verify no server groups are selected on the upgrade administration screen. The Site Upgrade button is not available if a server group is selected. Click Site Upgrade. Review the upgrade plan as presented on the Site Initiate screen.

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>This plan represents an approximation of how the servers are upgraded. Due to the dynamic nature of the upgrade, some servers (typically only C-level) may be upgraded in a different cycle than displayed here.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Site Initiate]</p>  <p>Note: Review the upgrade plan again and ensure all concerns noted in Table 6 have been addressed with the upgrade plan shown on the screen.</p> <p>If you need to rearrange the upgrade cycle, see section 5.2.3 to do it; otherwise, continue with the next step.</p> <p>There are some limitations with upgrading the DC server during its server group upgrade, which are upgraded in a group of servers. This is applicable for all upgrade options, for example DA-MP, vSTP MP(s). So, make sure the DC server is not upgraded in first upgrade cycle of the C-Level servers in its server group. Identify the DC server using Appendix N Identify the DC server.</p> <p>If the DC server displays by default in the first upgrade cycle of its server group, then rearrange the upgrade cycles using section 5.2.3 such that the DC server is not upgraded in the first upgrade cycle of its server group.</p> <p>vSTP MPs should be divided in cycles to avoid a network outage.</p> <p>In all cases, regardless of the number of cycles used to upgrade the DA-MP/vSTP server group, the DA-MP leader/vSTP MP leader should be the last server upgraded. By upgrading the MP leader last, the number of leader changes is minimized during the upgrade.</p> <p>The DA-MP leader is designated on the active SOAM at Diameter > Maintenance > DA-MPs > Peer DA-MP Status, where MP Leader = Yes.</p> <p>Also, check for the MP leader on the vSTP. This is done on the active SOAM CLI.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the MMI command using the REST Client for the vSTP configuration. The MMI user guide can be accessed by navigating to Main Menu > MMI Guide. Use the <code>/vstp/mpleader</code> MO.

Step #	Procedure	Description																									
		<p>The result is the hostname of the MP leader server.</p> <p>6. In the Upgrade Settings section of the form, use the Upgrade ISO options to select the target ISO.</p> <p>Click OK to start the upgrade sequence. Control returns to the Upgrade Administration screen.</p>																									
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress</p>	<p>See step 4. for instructions if the upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.</p> <p>Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the upgrade displays as FAILED.</p> <p>The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</p> <p>1. With the Entire Site link selected, a summary of the upgrade status for the selected site displays. This summary identifies the server group(s) currently upgrading, the number of servers within each server group that are upgrading, and the number of servers that are pending upgrade. Use this view to monitor the upgrade status of the overall site.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Fri Dec 30 00:09:45 201</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE1_SG IPFE2_SG IPFE3_SG IPFE4_SG MP_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Upgrade Method</th> <th>Server Upgrade States</th> <th>Server Application Ver</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SO_East</td> <td>DSR (active/standby pair)</td> <td>OAM (Bulk)</td> <td>Pending (1/2) Upgrading (1/2)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (2/2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE2_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Pending (1/1)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP_SG</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>Bulk (50% availability)</td> <td>Pending (2/4)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (4/4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE3_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Pending (1/1)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>More detailed status is available by selecting the individual server group links. The server group view shows the status of each individual server within the selected server group.</p> <p>During the upgrade, the servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down) Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) 	Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	Server Application Ver	SO_East	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Pending (1/2) Upgrading (1/2)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (2/2)	IPFE2_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)	MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Pending (2/4)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (4/4)	IPFE3_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)
Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	Server Application Ver																							
SO_East	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Pending (1/2) Upgrading (1/2)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (2/2)																							
IPFE2_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)																							
MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Pending (2/4)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (4/4)																							
IPFE3_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Pending (1/1)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0 (1/1)																							

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) Alarm ID = 31149 (DB Late Write Nonactive)</p> <p>Note: Do not accept any upgrades at this time.</p> <p>Note: In the unlikely event that after the upgrade, if the Upgrade State of server is Backout Ready and the Status Message displays Server could not restart the application to complete the upgrade, then perform Appendix M Manual Completion of Server Upgrade to restore the server to full operational status and return to this step to continue the upgrade.</p> <p>Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.</p> <p>If the upgrade fails, do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If the upgrade of a server fails:	<p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (via ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/platcfg.log</p> <p>It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) by referring to Appendix Z of this document and provide these files. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p> <p>When upgrade failure issue is identified and resolved, then Auto Site upgrade can be started again without executing any failed server recovery procedure.</p>
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Post upgrade verification	Proceed to section 5.4 Site Post-Upgrade Procedures for post upgrade verification procedures.

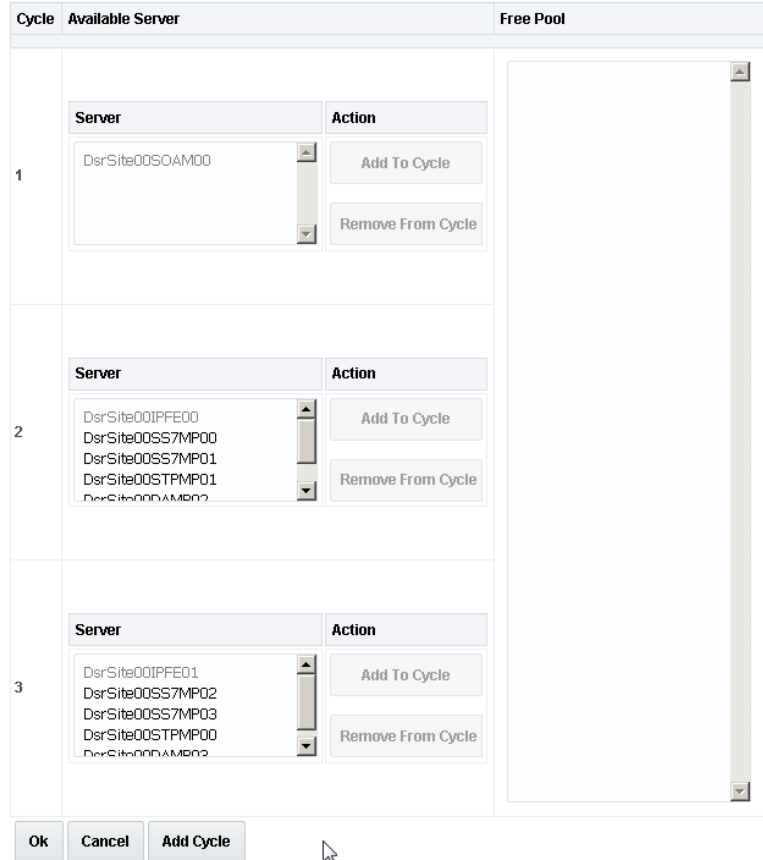
5.2.3 Rearrange Automated Site Upgrade Cycles

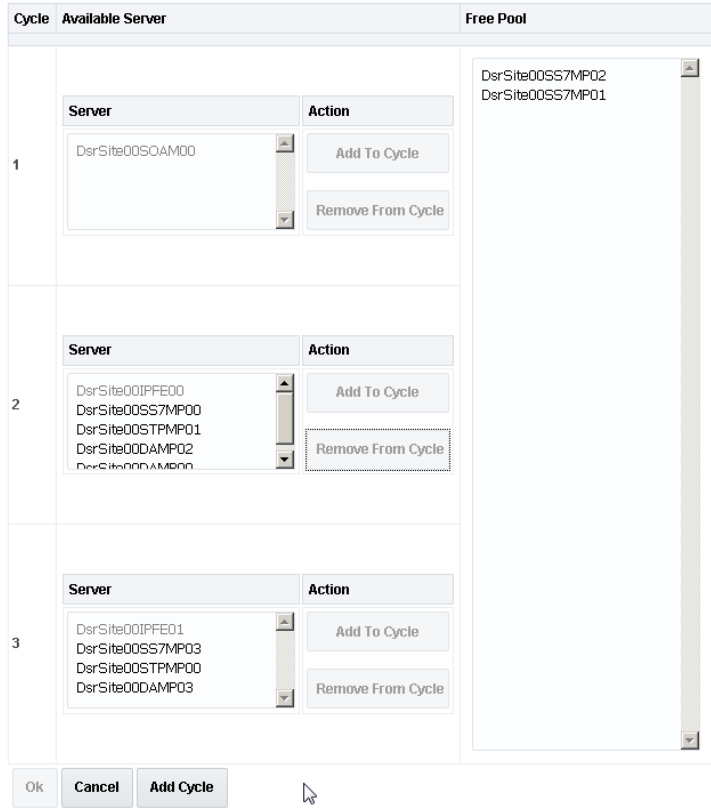
This procedure provides details to rearrange the Automated Site Upgrade cycles if required.

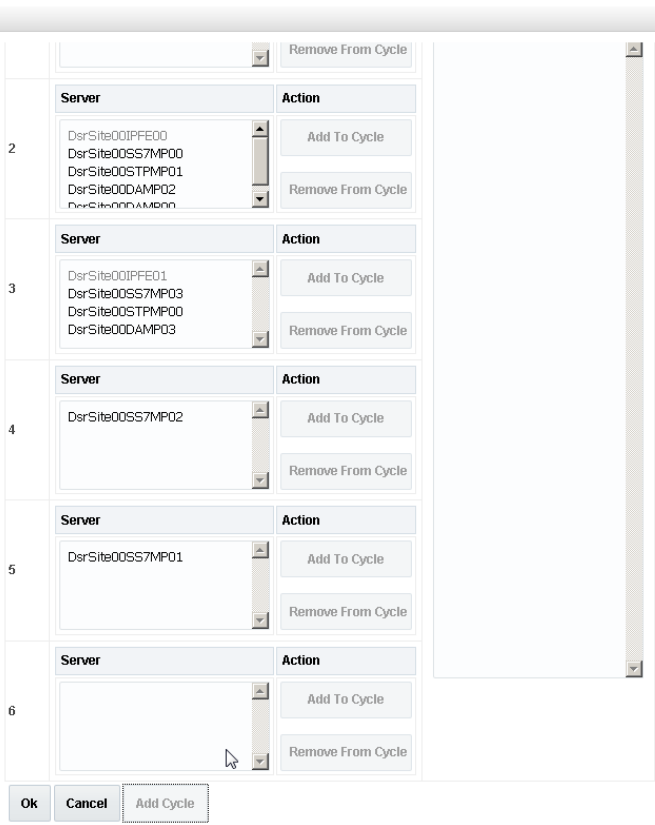
Automated Site Upgrade provides an option to rearrange servers in the cycles thus eliminating the risks of a potential network outage. ASU provides the flexibility to user to order the servers within the cycles without breaking the Minimum Availability and DA-MP Leader/vSTP MP leader criteria.

Procedure 20. Rearrangement of upgrade cycles for Automated Site Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides option to rearrange the upgrade cycles for Automated Site Upgrade. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1.	<p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Active NOAM VIP: Rearrange the upgrade cycle as needed</p>	<p>Click Rearrange Cycles.</p>
2.	<p><input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Active NOAM VIP: Rearrangement of Servers in cycles</p>	<p>1. Automated Site Upgrade Cycles across the sites.</p> <p>Note: Only DA-MPs, and vSTPs, can be re-arranged. Re-arranging SBR and IPFE servers is restricted.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Rearrange Cycles]</p>  <p> 2. When a server needs to be removed from cycle and needs to be added in an existing cycle or a new cycle, do this: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the desired server in the list and click Remove from Cycle. The server Moves to the Free Pool on the right side. </p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Rearrange Cycles]</p>  <p>2. Add the servers in Free Pool to another existing cycle or new cycle.</p> <p>The next step describes how to add a new cycle, if required</p> <p>3. If there is no need to add a new cycle, then steps to rearrange the cycle are complete. Return to the section 5.2.2 step that pointed to this procedure.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Add new cycle (If required)</p>	<p>1. Click Add Cycle.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Rearrange Cycles]</p>  <p>After adding new cycle, servers available in free pool can be added in new cycle.</p> <p>2. Click OK.</p>

5.3 Automated Server Group/Manual Upgrade Overview

This section contains alternative site upgrade procedures that can be used when Automated Site Upgrade does not meet the needs or concerns of the customer. These procedures use a combination of Automated Server Group upgrade and manual server upgrades to upgrade a specific site.

Table 13 details the site upgrade plan for a non-PCA/PDRA site, which divides the upgrade into four cycles. A cycle is defined as the complete upgrade of one or more servers, from initiate upgrade to success or failure. The first two cycles consist of upgrading the SOAMs - the first cycle upgrades the standby SOAM, followed by the second cycle, which upgrades the active SOAM. Cycle 3 cannot begin until cycle 2 is complete. This ensures that the OAM controllers are always upgraded before any C-level servers.

The third cycle begins the upgrade of the C-level servers. In cycle 3, one-half of the DA-MPs, vSTP MPs, and IPFEs are upgraded. This leaves the remaining half of these server functions in-service to process traffic. The fourth cycle upgrades the second half of the DA-MPs, and IPFEs to complete the site upgrade.

Table 13. Non-PCA/PDRA Site Upgrade Plan

Cycle 1	Cycle 2	Cycle 3	Cycle 4
Standby SOAM	Active SOAM		
		½ DA-MPs	½ DA-MPs
		½ IPFEs	½ IPFEs
		½ vSTP MPs	½ vSTP MPs

Table 14 details the site upgrade plan for a PCA/PDRA system with two-site redundancy. This upgrade plan is divided into five cycles. The first two cycles consist of upgrading the SOAMs - the first cycle upgrades the standby and spare SOAMs in parallel, followed by the second cycle, which upgrades the active SOAM. Cycle 3 cannot begin until cycle 2 is complete. This ensures that the OAM controllers are always upgraded before any C-level servers.

The third cycle begins the upgrade of the C-level servers. In cycle 3, one-half of the DA-MPs, IPFEs, and vSTP servers are upgraded in parallel with all of the spare SBRs. This leaves the remaining server functions in-service to process traffic.

The fourth cycle upgrades the second half of the DA-MPs, and IPFEs in parallel with the standby SBRs.

The fifth cycle is required to upgrade the active SBR(s), completing the site upgrade.

Table 14. Two-Site Redundancy PCA Site Upgrade Plan

Cycle 1	Cycle 2	Cycle 3	Cycle 4	Cycle 5
Standby SOAM, Spare SOAM	Active SOAM			
		½ DA-MPs	½ DA-MPs	
		½ IPFEs	½ IPFEs	
		Spare SBR(s)	Standby SBR(s)	Active SBR(s)

Table 15 details the site upgrade plan for a PCA/PDRA system with three-site redundancy. This upgrade plan is divided into six cycles.

Note: It is mandatory to follow the mentioned division and execution order of the cycles. This ensures the OAM controllers are always upgraded before any C-level servers.

For C-level servers, the division of servers can be planned in different cycles depending on customer requirements, which means SBR and DA-MPs can be upgraded in different cycles. **But, as mentioned, spare, standby, and active SBRs should be upgraded in different cycles.**

The first two cycles consist of upgrading the SOAMs – the first cycle upgrades the standby and spare SOAMs in parallel, followed by the second cycle, which upgrades the active SOAM. Cycle 3 cannot begin until cycle 2 is complete. **This ensures the OAM controllers are always upgraded before any C-level servers.**

The third cycle begins the upgrade of the C-level servers. In cycle 3, one-half of the DA-MPs, and IPFEs are upgraded in parallel with one spare SBR. This leaves the remaining server functions in-service to process traffic.

The fourth cycle upgrades the second half of the DA-MPs, and IPFEs in parallel with the second spare SBR.

The fifth cycle upgrades the standby SBR(s), and the sixth cycle is required to upgrade the active SBR(s), completing the site upgrade.

Table 15. Three-Site Redundancy PCA Site Upgrade Plan

Cycle 1	Cycle 2	Cycle 3	Cycle 4	Cycle 5	Cycle 6
Standby SOAM, Spare SOAM	Active SOAM				
		½ DA-MPs	½ DA-MPs		
		½ IPFEs	½ IPFEs		
		Spare SBR(s)	Spare SBR(s)	Standby SBR(s)	Active SBR(s)

5.3.1 Site Upgrade Planning

The upgrade of the site servers consists of a mixture of automated upgrades using the Automated Server Group upgrade feature, along with “manual” upgrades that are a little less automated.

Table 16 should be used to plan the upgrade of each site. For the server groups that are upgraded using ASG, the only planning necessary is to record the server group name. ASG automatically selects the individual servers to upgrade. The IPFE, and vSTP (if equipped) server groups must be upgraded manually since there is only one server per server group. Planning is necessary for these server groups to ensure traffic continuity. Record the hostname of the servers to be upgraded in each iteration. **vSTP MPs should be divided in cycles to avoid a network outage.**

While choosing ASG and Manual upgrades for multi-active MP servers, see the limitations in Appendix O for the Automated Server Group upgrade option.

If your network aligns with any of the scenarios listed in Appendix O, then do NOT use the Automated Server Group. This avoids risks of a potential network outage.

There are some limitations with upgrading the DC server in a C-level server group, which are upgraded in a group of servers, for example, DA-MP, vSTP MP(s). So, make sure the DC server is not upgraded in first upgrade cycle of the C-Level servers in its server group. Identify the DC server using Appendix N Identify the DC server.

In all cases, regardless of the number of cycles used to upgrade the DA-MP/vSTP server group, the DA-MP leader/vSTP MP leader should be the last server upgraded. By upgrading the MP leader last, the number of leader changes is minimized during the upgrade.

The DA-MP leader is designated on the active SOAM at **Diameter > Maintenance > DA-MPs > Peer DA-MP Status**, where **MP Leader = Yes**.

Also, check for the MP leader on the vSTP. This is done on the active SOAM CLI.

1. From the MMI command using the REST Client for the vSTP configuration.

The MMI user guide can be accessed by navigating to **Main Menu > MMI Guide**.

2. Use the **/vstp/mpleader** MO.

The result is the hostname of the MP leader server.

Table 16. Site Upgrade Planning Sheet

Iteration 1		Notes
Standby SOAM Hostname	Spare SOAM Hostname	If a spare SOAM exists, the spare and standby SOAMs are upgraded manually. Otherwise, the SOAMs are upgraded with ASG.

Iteration 1		Notes
Iteration 2		Notes
Active SOAM		The active SOAM is upgraded in iteration 2, either manually or by ASG.
Iteration 3		Notes
DA-MP Group 1		ASG automatically selects DA-MPs for upgrade
IPFE 1 Hostname		Manual upgrade
IPFE 3 Hostname		Manual upgrade
Spare SBR(s)		ASG automatically selects the spare SBR(s) for upgrade
Iteration 4		Notes
DA-MP Group 2		ASG automatically selects DA-MPs for upgrade
IPFE 2 Hostname		Manual upgrade
IPFE 4 Hostname		Manual upgrade
Standby SBR(s)		ASG automatically selects the standby SBR(s) for upgrade
Iteration 5		Notes
Active SBR(s)		ASG automatically selects the active SBR(s) for upgrade

Table 17 shows the procedures to be executed for the site upgrade, along with the estimated time to complete each step. Use Table 17 as a guide for determining the order in which the procedures are to be executed.

Table 17. Site Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 14	0:10-0:20	0:10-0:20	Procedure 14	None
Procedure 16	0:05-0:10	0:15-0:30	Site Upgrade Options Check	None
Procedure 16	0:01-0:05	0:16-0:35	Site Upgrade Options Check	Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact
Procedure 21	0:01-0:05	0:17-0:40	SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks	No Traffic Impact
Iteration 1	0:40-1:00	0:57-1:40	Standby SOAM, Spare SOAM (if equipped)	Refer to Section 5.3.2 for details
Iteration 2	0:40-1:00	1:37-2:40	Active SOAM	Refer to Section 5.3.2 for details
Iteration 3	0:40-1:00	2:17-3:40	½ DA-MPs, ½ IPFEs, Spare SBR(s), ½ vSTP MPs	Refer to Section 5.3.4 for details
Iteration 4	0:40-1:00	2:57-4:40	½ DA-MPs, ½ IPFEs, Standby SBR(s), ½ vSTP MPs	Refer to Section 5.3.5 for details
Iteration 5	0:00-1:00	2:57-5:40	Active SBR(s)	Refer to Section 5.3.6 for details
Procedure 27	0:02	2:59-5:42	Allow Site Provisioning	Site Provisioning Enabled, No Traffic Impact
Procedure 28	0:10-0:15	3:09-5:57	Site Post-Upgrade Health Check	None

5.3.2 SOAM Upgrade Overview

This section contains the steps required to perform a major or incremental upgrade of the SOAMs for a DSR site.

During the site upgrade (SOAMs plus all C-level servers), site provisioning is disabled. Provisioning is re-enabled at the completion of the site upgrade.

For each site in the DSR, the SOAM(s) and associated MPs and IPFEs should be upgraded within a single maintenance window.

Table 18 shows the estimated execution times for the SOAM upgrade. Procedure 23 is the recommended procedure for upgrading the SOAMs when there is no spare SOAM. ASG automatically upgrades the standby SOAM followed by the active SOAM.


If the site does have a spare SOAM, Procedure 23 is the recommended procedure. The manual upgrade procedure upgrades the standby and spare SOAMs in parallel, followed by the active SOAM.

Note: For information on SOAM VM profile for increased MP Capacity, refer to Appendix V.

Table 18. SOAM Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Iteration 1 & 2 Procedure 22 or Procedure 23	1:20-2:40	1:20-2:40	Procedure 22 Procedure 23	No traffic impact

5.3.3 Upgrade SOAMs



!!WARNING!! The following procedures must be completed before the start of SOAM upgrade: Procedure 14; Procedure 15; Procedure 17.

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the SOAMs. The SOAMs can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SOAM upgrade depends on the existence of a spare SOAM. If the site includes a spare SOAM, then the SOAMs are upgraded manually so that the spare and standby can be upgraded concurrently. This reduces the time required to upgrade the SOAMs.

Regardless of which SOAM upgrade option is used, Procedure 21 SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks is required to ensure site provisioning is disabled.

If the site does **not** include a spare SOAM, use the automated SOAM upgrade in Procedure 22.

If the site does include a spare SOAM, use the manual SOAM upgrade in Procedure 23.

Procedure 21. SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, in preparation for upgrading the SOAMs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: View KPIs to verify traffic status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the active SOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Status & Manage > KPIs. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Verify Site Provisioning is disabled	<p>Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 17.</p> <p>In the GUI status bar, where it says Connected using ..., check for the message Site Provisioning disabled.</p> <p>If the message is present, continue with the next procedure per Table 17; otherwise, execute Procedure 17.</p>

5.3.3.1 Automated SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby)

Procedure 22 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs if the site does not include a spare SOAM. If the site has a spare SOAM, upgrade using Procedure 23. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to Section 5.3.4 Upgrade Iteration 3.

Procedure 22. Automated SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby)

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade SOAM Server Group	<p>Upgrade the SOAM server group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Serial upgrade mode <p>Execute Appendix D Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and proceed to section 5.3.4 Upgrade Iteration 3.</p>

Note: Once the network element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a server group and re-added, the server must be restored using disaster recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server is inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.3.3.2 Manual SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby/Spare)

Procedure 23 upgrades the SOAM server group if the site includes a spare SOAM. If the SOAM server group was upgraded using Procedure 22, then do not execute this procedure; proceed to section 5.3.4 Upgrade Iteration 3.

Procedure 23. Manual SOAM Upgrade (Active/Standby/Spare)

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades the SOAMs in a DSR manually.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade standby and spare SOAMs in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure	<p>Execute Appendix D Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade active SOAM using Upgrade Single Server procedure	<p>Execute Appendix C Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and proceed to section 5.3.4 Upgrade Iteration 3.</p>

Note: Once the network element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a server group and re-added, the server must be restored using disaster recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server is inhibited due to the difference in release versions.


5.3.4 Upgrade Iteration 3

Upgrade iteration 3 begins the upgrade of the site C-level servers. As shown in Table 16, iteration 3 consists of upgrading the DA-MPs, IPFEs, spare SBR(s), and vSTP MP server, if equipped. The C-level components are upgraded in parallel to maximize Maintenance Window usage.

Table 19 shows the estimated time required to upgrade the C-level servers for iteration 3.

Table 19. Iteration 3 Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 24	0:40-1:00	0:40-1:00	Procedure 24	½ DA-MPs, ½ IPFEs, spare SBR(s), ½ vSTPs servers will be offline



CAUTION

ASG does not allow the operator to specify the upgrade order of the DA-MP servers. If a manual upgrade was recommended in section 3.3, do not use ASG to upgrade the DA-MPS in this iteration. Alternate upgrade procedures are provided Appendix F.3.

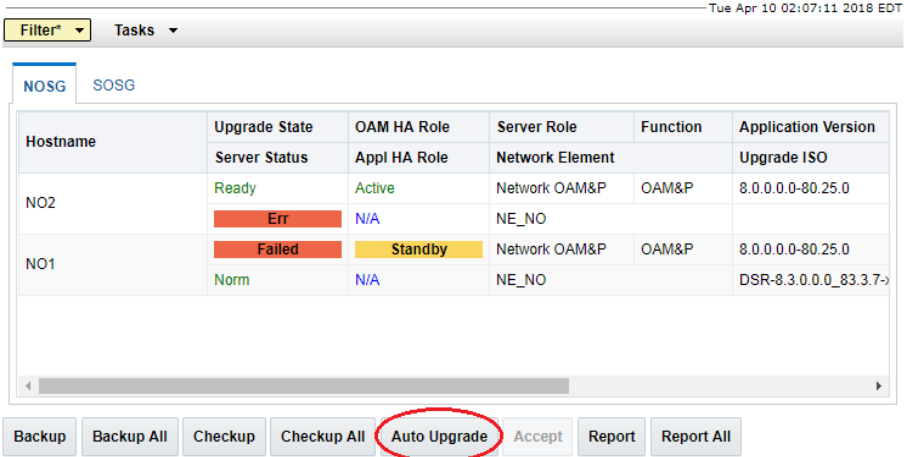
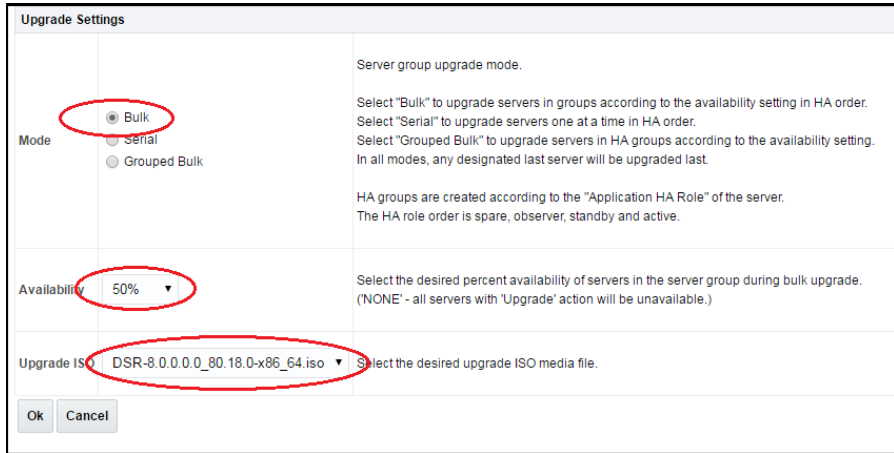
Procedure 24 upgrades ½ of the DA-MPs, ½ of the IPFEs, ½ of the vSTPs, and the spare SBR(s). Refer to Table 16 for the hostnames of the servers to be upgraded in this iteration.

Procedure 24. Upgrade Iteration 3

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a portion of the C-level servers for iteration 3.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Select the DA-MP server group to view pre-upgrade status of DA-MPs</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 3. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. 4. Select the DA-MP Server Group link. 5. For the DA-MP servers to be upgraded in iteration 3, verify the application version value is the expected source software release version.

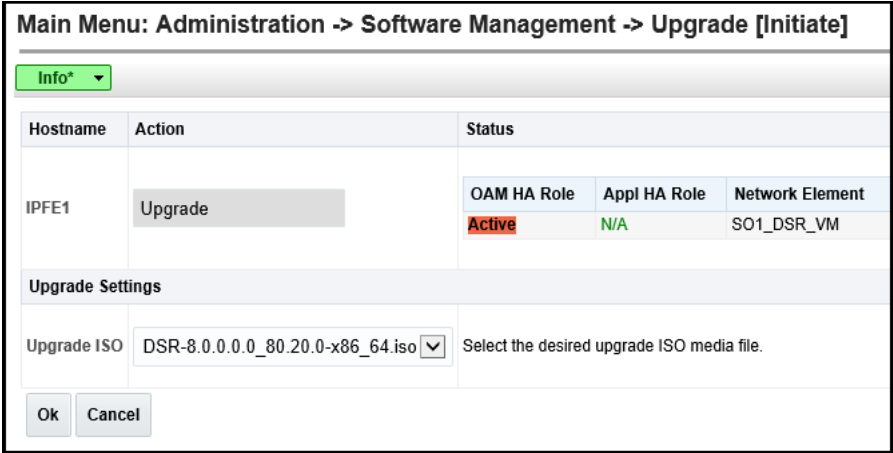
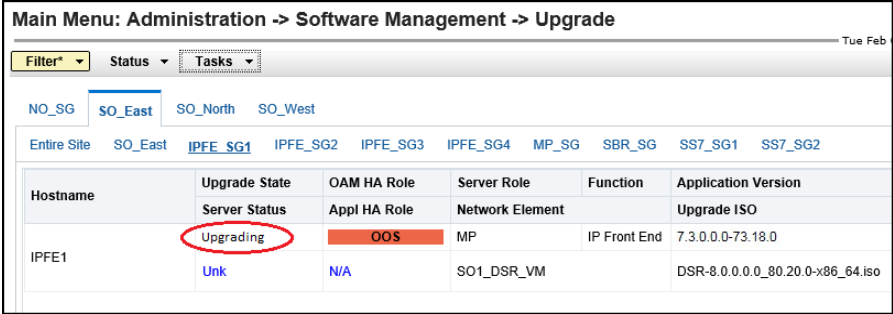

Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of DA-MP servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the servers are in Backup Needed state, select the servers and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is in the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Tue Apr 10 02:07:11 2018 EDT</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NOSG SOSG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">NO1</td> <td>Failed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7-></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0	Err	N/A	NE_NO			NO1	Failed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0	Norm	N/A	NE_NO		DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7->
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																															
	Err	N/A	NE_NO																																	
NO1	Failed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																															
	Norm	N/A	NE_NO		DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7->																															

Step #	Procedure	Description																																																								
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the DA-MP server group of the site being upgraded.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE1_SG IPFE2_SG IPFE3_SG IPFE4_SG MP_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <td></td> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP3</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP4</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	MP3	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			MP4	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			MP2	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																																					
MP3	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0																																																					
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																																							
MP4	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0																																																					
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																																							
MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0																																																					
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																																							
MP2	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0																																																					
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																																							

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate the Automated Server Group upgrade of the DA-MP servers (part 1)</p>	<p>1. To use the Automated Server Group upgrade option, verify no servers in the server group are selected.</p> <p>2. Click Auto Upgrade.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a web interface for server management. At the top, it says 'Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade' and 'Tue Apr 10 02:07:11 2018 EDT'. Below this is a 'Filter*' dropdown and a 'Tasks' dropdown. There are two tabs: 'NOSG' and 'SOSG'. A table displays server information:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Failed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NE_NO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7-></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>At the bottom of the interface, there are several buttons: 'Backup', 'Backup All', 'Checkup', 'Checkup All', 'Auto Upgrade' (circled in red), 'Accept', 'Report', and 'Report All'.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0		Err	N/A	NE_NO			NO1	Failed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0		Norm	N/A	NE_NO		DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7->
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
NO2	Ready	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																																	
	Err	N/A	NE_NO																																			
NO1	Failed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0-80.25.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	NE_NO		DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.7->																																	
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate the Automated Server Group upgrade of the DA-MP server (part 2)</p>	<p>1. The Upgrade Settings section of the Initiate screen controls the behavior of the server group upgrade. Select Bulk Mode.</p> <p>2. Select 50% for the Availability setting.</p> <p>3. Select the appropriate ISO from the Upgrade ISO options.</p> <p>4. Click OK to start the upgrade.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Upgrade Settings' dialog box. It has three main sections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mode: Radio buttons for 'Bulk' (selected and circled in red), 'Serial', and 'Grouped Bulk'. Availability: A dropdown menu set to '50%' (circled in red). Upgrade ISO: A dropdown menu showing 'DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso' (circled in red). <p>At the bottom are 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons. The right side of the dialog contains explanatory text for each setting.</p>																																				

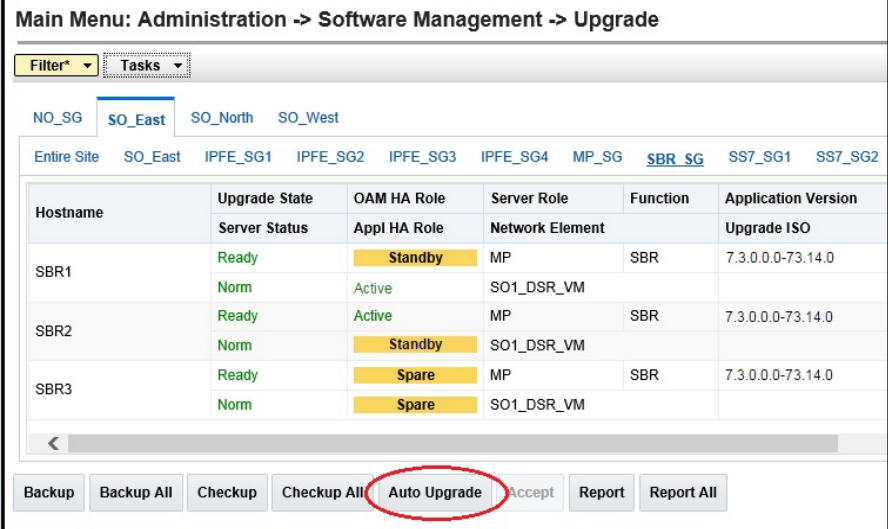
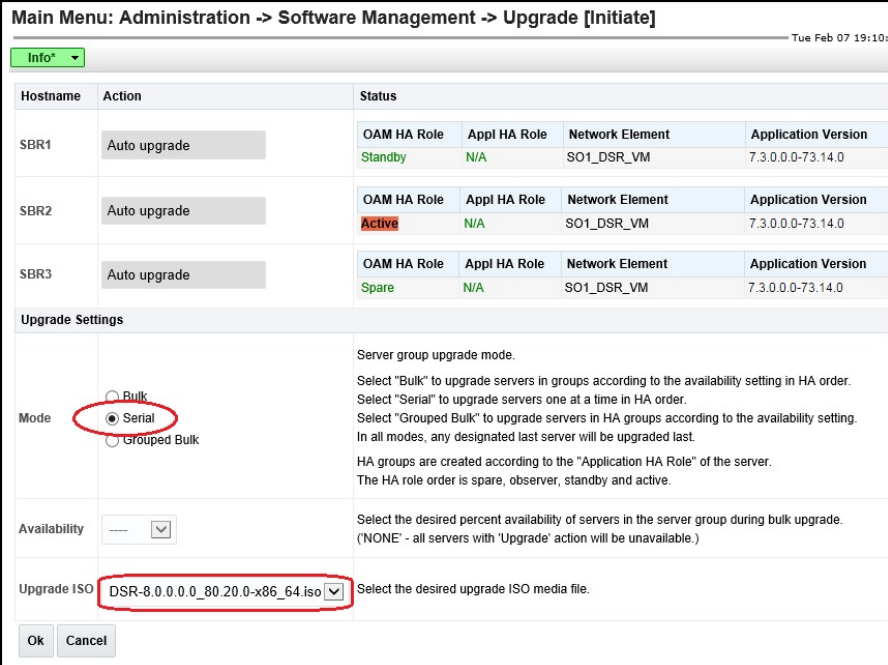
Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress</p>	<p>Observe the upgrade state of the DA-MP servers. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE1_SG IPFE2_SG IPFE3_SG IPFE4_SG MP_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP1</td> <td>Upgrading</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Err</td> <td>Observer</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">MP2</td> <td>Pending</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Err</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>While the DA-MP servers are upgrading, continue with the next step to upgrade additional C-level components in parallel.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	MP1	Upgrading	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0	Err	Observer	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso	MP2	Pending	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0	Err	Active	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
MP1	Upgrading	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0																															
	Err	Observer	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso																															
MP2	Pending	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.2.0.0-72.25.0																															
	Err	Active	SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso																															
<p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Identify the IPFE server group(s) to upgrade</p>	<p>From the data captured in Table 16, identify the IPFE server group(s) to upgrade in iteration 3.</p>																																		
<p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of IPFEs</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the link for each IPFE server group to upgrade. For the IPFE servers to be upgraded in iteration 3, verify the application version value is the expected source software release version. If a server is in Backup Needed state, select the servers and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is in the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">IPFE1</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	IPFE1	Backup Needed	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM													
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
IPFE1	Backup Needed	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0-73.18.0																															
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																																	

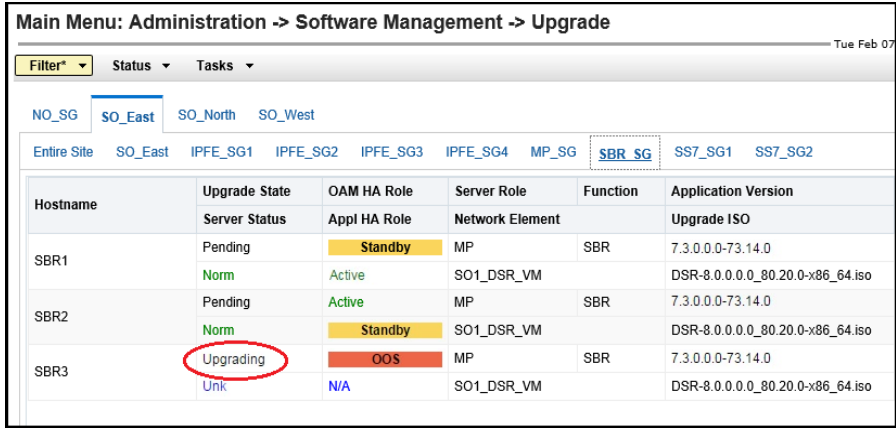
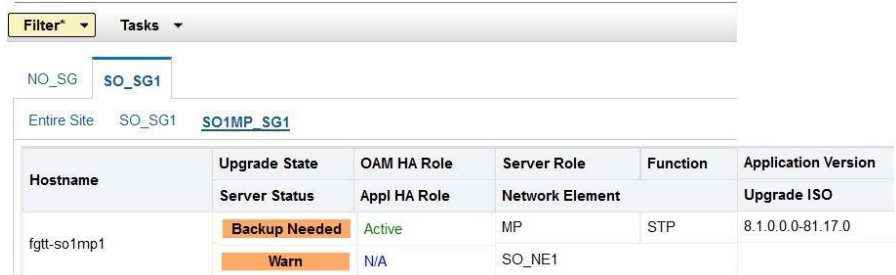
Step #	Procedure	Description																								
<p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the IPFE server group being upgraded.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPFE1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0		Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																					
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																							
<p>10.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate IPFE upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the Upgrade Server method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to upgrade. 2. Click Upgrade Server. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPFE1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0		Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.2.0.0.0-72.25.0																					
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																							

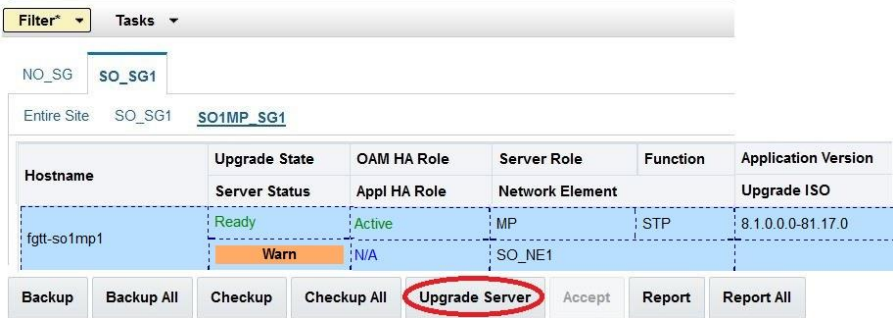
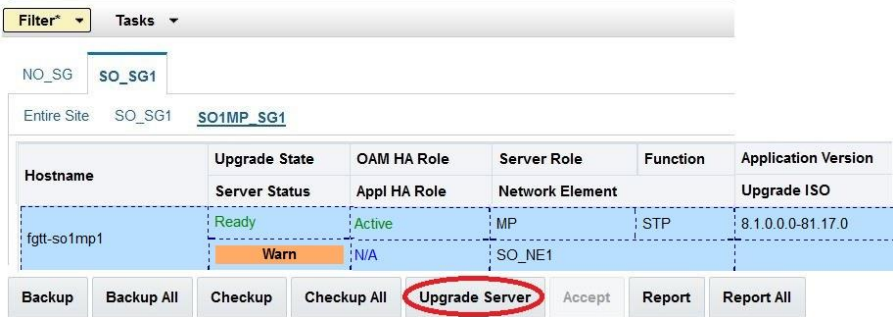
Step #	Procedure	Description
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Initiate IPFE upgrade (part 2)	Select target ISO. 1. On the Upgrade Initiate screen, select the target ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. 2. Click OK to start the upgrade. 
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress	Observe the upgrade state of the IPFE server. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column. 
13. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each IPFE	Repeat steps 7. through 12. for the next IPFE to be upgraded in this iteration per Table 16.
14. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade 	From the data captured in Table 16, identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade in iteration 3. ASG steps (Auto Upgrade), mentioned in the next steps, do not provide any liberty to the operator to verify observations during the upgrade. If a manual upgrade was recommended for the SBR upgrade, do not use ASG to upgrade all the SBR servers from the same server group in this single iteration. Alternate upgrade procedures are provided in Procedure 52. Spare SBR server(s) need to be upgraded. If the Manual Upgrade is used, skip ASG steps 15. to 19.

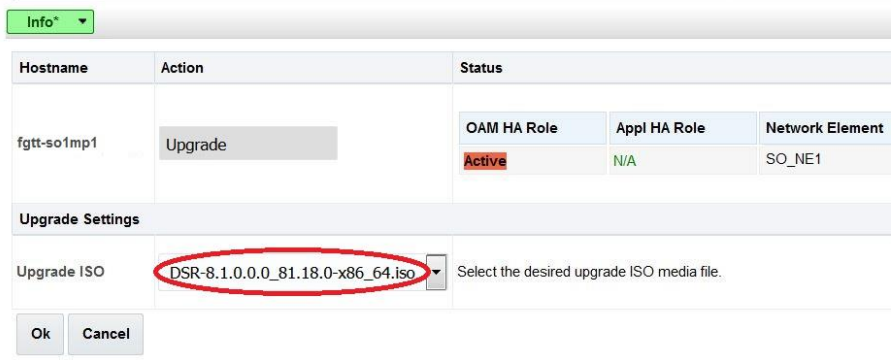
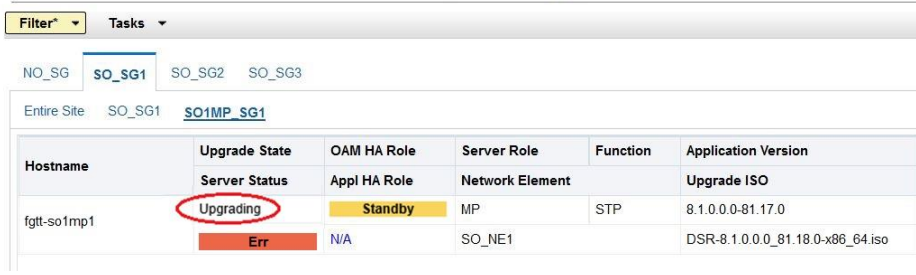
Step #	Procedure	Description																																												
15. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of SBRs to upgrade	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the link for each SBR server group to upgrade. For the SBR servers to be upgraded in iteration 3, verify the application version value is the expected source software release version. If the server is in Backup Needed state, select the servers and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is in the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR2</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR3</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR1</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SBR2	Backup Needed	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR3	Backup Needed	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR1	Backup Needed	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role		Server Role	Function	Application Version																																								
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																									
SBR2	Backup Needed	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																									
	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM																																											
SBR3	Backup Needed	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																									
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																											
SBR1	Backup Needed	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																									
	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM																																											

Step #	Procedure	Description																																													
<p>16. □</p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the SBR server group being upgraded.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <td></td> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR3</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SBR2	Ready	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR3	Ready	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR1	Ready	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																										
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																										
SBR2	Ready	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																										
	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM																																												
SBR3	Ready	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																										
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																												
SBR1	Ready	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0																																										
	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM																																												

Step #	Procedure	Description																																													
<p>17.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate SBR upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the Auto Upgrade method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> To use the Automated Server Group upgrade option, select the SBR server group to upgrade. Verify no servers in the server group are selected. Click Auto Upgrade.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">SBR3</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SBR1	Ready	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR2	Ready	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Standby	SO1_DSR_VM			SBR3	Ready	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																										
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																										
SBR1	Ready	Standby	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																										
	Norm	Active	SO1_DSR_VM																																												
SBR2	Ready	Active	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																										
	Norm	Standby	SO1_DSR_VM																																												
SBR3	Ready	Spare	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																										
	Norm	Spare	SO1_DSR_VM																																												
<p>18.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate SBR upgrade (part 2)</p>	<p>Set upgrade options and start the Automated Server Group Upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The Upgrade Settings section of the Initiate screen controls the behavior of the automated upgrade. Select Serial mode. Select the appropriate ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. Click OK to start the upgrade.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate] Tue Feb 07 19:10:...</p> <p>Info*</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SBR1</td> <td>Auto upgrade</td> <td>OAM HA Role: Standby, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR2</td> <td>Auto upgrade</td> <td>OAM HA Role: Active, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR3</td> <td>Auto upgrade</td> <td>OAM HA Role: Spare, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Upgrade Settings</p> <p>Server group upgrade mode.</p> <p>Mode: <input type="radio"/> Bulk <input checked="" type="radio"/> Serial <input type="radio"/> Grouped Bulk</p> <p>Availability: [---] [v]</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso [v] Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>OK Cancel</p>	Hostname	Action	Status	SBR1	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Standby, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0	SBR2	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Active, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0	SBR3	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Spare, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																	
Hostname	Action	Status																																													
SBR1	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Standby, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																													
SBR2	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Active, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																													
SBR3	Auto upgrade	OAM HA Role: Spare, Appl HA Role: N/A, Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM, Application Version: 7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																													

Step #	Procedure	Description																														
19. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress	<p>Observe the Upgrade State of the SBR server group. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column (not shown).</p>  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SBR1</td> <td>Pending Norm</td> <td>Standby Active</td> <td>MP SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR2</td> <td>Pending Norm</td> <td>Standby Active</td> <td>MP SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR3</td> <td>Upgrading Unk</td> <td>OOS N/A</td> <td>MP SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SBR1	Pending Norm	Standby Active	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso	SBR2	Pending Norm	Standby Active	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso	SBR3	Upgrading Unk	OOS N/A	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																											
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																											
SBR1	Pending Norm	Standby Active	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso																											
SBR2	Pending Norm	Standby Active	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso																											
SBR3	Upgrading Unk	OOS N/A	MP SO1_DSR_VM	SBR	7.3.0.0-73.14.0 DSR-8.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso																											
20. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each SBR server group	Repeat steps 14. through 19. for the next SBR server group to be upgraded per Table 16.																														
21. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the STP server group(s) to upgrade	From the data captured in Table 16, identify the STP server group(s) to upgrade in iteration 3.																														
22. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of vSTP MP servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the link for each vSTP server group to upgrade. For the vSTP servers to be upgraded in iteration 3, verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version. If a server is in Backup Needed state, select the server and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max Ha Role is the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_SG1</p> <p>Entire Site SO_SG1 SO1MP_SG1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>fgjt-so1mp1</td> <td>Backup Needed Warn</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>MP SO_NE1</td> <td>STP</td> <td>8.1.0.0-81.17.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	fgjt-so1mp1	Backup Needed Warn	Active N/A	MP SO_NE1	STP	8.1.0.0-81.17.0												
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																											
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																											
fgjt-so1mp1	Backup Needed Warn	Active N/A	MP SO_NE1	STP	8.1.0.0-81.17.0																											

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>23.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the vSTP MP server group being upgraded.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure)
<p>24.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate vSTP MP upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the Upgrade Server upgrade method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded. 2. Click Upgrade Server. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> 

Step #	Procedure	Description
25. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Initiate vSTP upgrade (part 2)	<p>Select target ISO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the Upgrade Initiate screen, select the target ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. Click OK to initiate the upgrade. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p> 
26. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress	<p>Observe the Upgrade State of the vSTP MP server. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> 
27. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each vSTP server(s).	Repeat steps 22. through 26. for the next vSTP servers to be upgraded per Table 16.
28. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress	<p>See step 29. for instructions if the upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.</p> <p>Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade displays as FAILED.</p> <p>The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Sequence through the server group links for the server groups being upgraded. Observe the Upgrade State of the servers of interest. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column. <p>During the upgrade, the servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down) Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) <p>Database (DB) replication failure alarms may display during an Automated Site Upgrade or during an event that resets multiple servers in parallel. The DB on the child servers is not updated until resolved. Refer to Appendix O resolve this issue.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Half of the DA-MP and SBR server groups are upgraded in iteration 3. ASG automatically sequences to iteration 4 to upgrade the remaining servers. Periodically monitor these servers for failures. 5. For the IPFE servers being upgraded, wait for the upgrades to complete. The Status Message column displays Success after approximately 20 to 50 minutes. Do not proceed to iteration 4 until the IPFE servers have completed upgrade. <p>Note: Do not accept any upgrades at this time.</p> <p>If any upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
29. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If the upgrade of a server fails	<p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (using ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre> /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log </pre> <p>It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and provide these files. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>

5.3.5 Upgrade Iteration 4

Upgrade iteration 4 continues the upgrade of the site C-level servers. As shown in Table 16, iteration 4 consists of upgrading the second half of the DA-MPs, vSTPs, and IPFEs, as well as the standby SBR(s), if equipped.

Table 20 shows the estimated time required to upgrade the C-level servers for iteration 4.

Table 20. Iteration 4 Upgrade Execution Overview.

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 25	0:40-1:00	0:40-1:00	Procedure 25	½ DA-MPs, ½ IPFEs, standby SBR(s), ½ vSTP servers are offline

Procedure 25 provides the steps to upgrade, ½ of the vSTPs servers and ½ of the IPFEs. ASG automatically upgrades the DA-MPs and SBRs.

Procedure 25. Upgrade Iteration 4

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a portion of the C-level servers for iteration 4.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the IPFE server group(s) to upgrade	From the data captured in Table 16, identify the IPFE server group(s) to upgrade in iteration 4.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of IPFEs	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the link of each IPFE server group to be upgraded. For the IPFE servers to be upgraded in iteration 4, verify the application version value is the expected source software release version. If a server is in Backup Needed state, select the servers and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is in the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

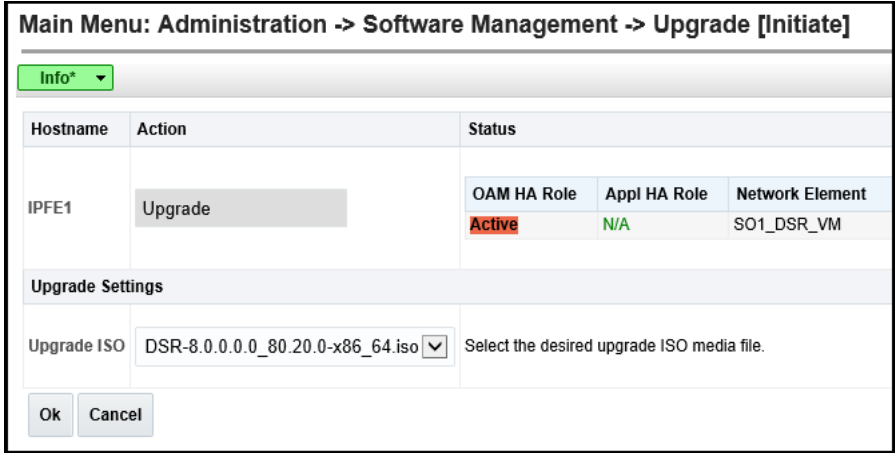
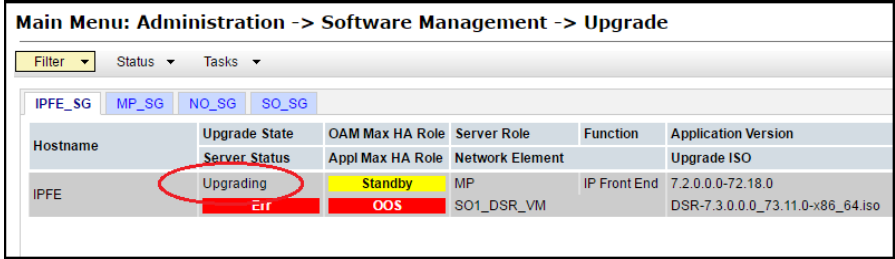
Filter* Tasks

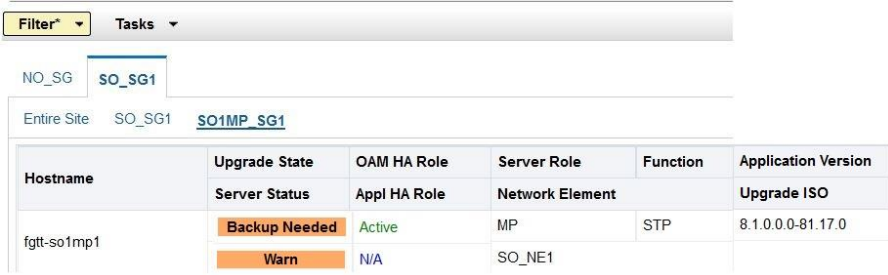
NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West

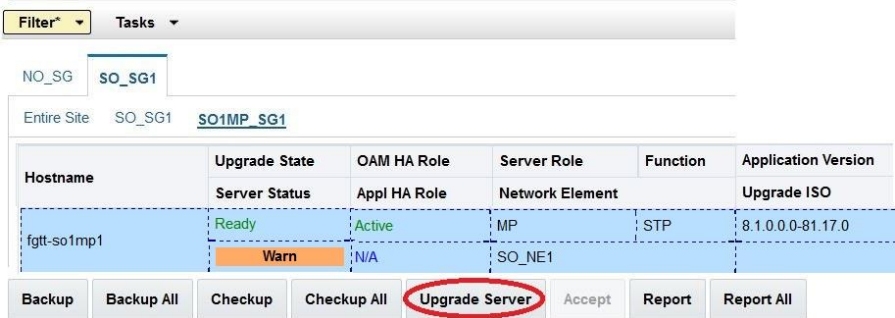
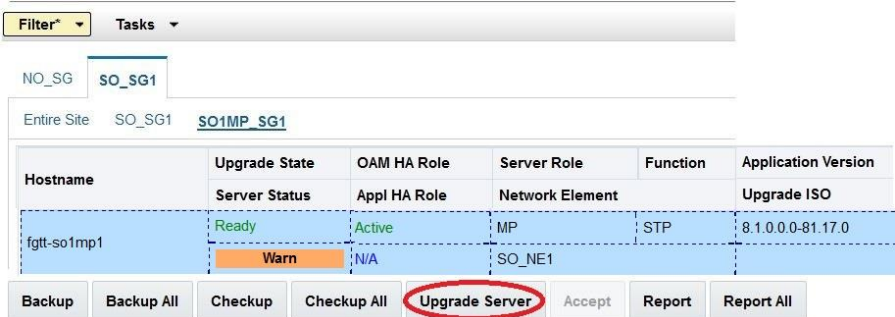
Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2

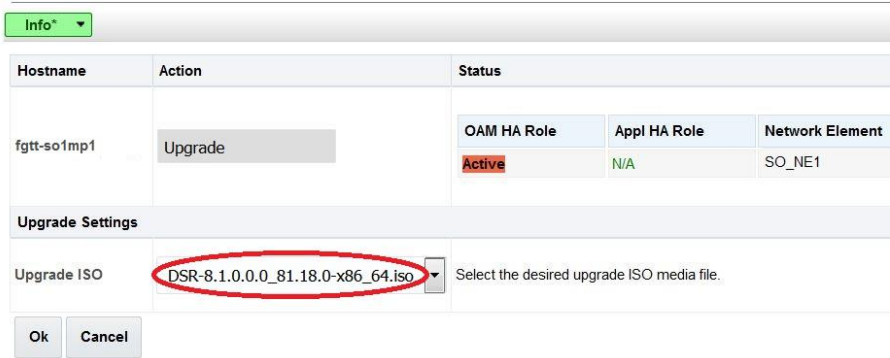
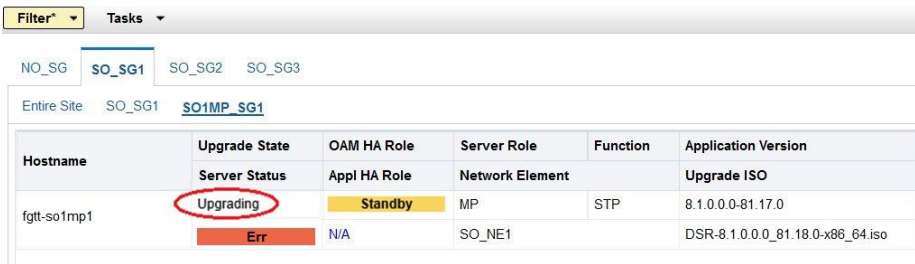

Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO
IPFE1	Backup Needed	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0.0-73.18.0
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		

Step #	Procedure	Description																								
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the IPFE server group being upgraded.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPFE1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0-73.18.0		Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.3.0.0-73.18.0																					
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																							
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate IPFE upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the Upgrade Server method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded. Click Upgrade Server. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>IPFE1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.25.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.2.0.0-72.25.0		Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
IPFE1	Ready	Active	MP	IP Front End	7.2.0.0-72.25.0																					
	Norm	N/A	SO1_DSR_VM																							

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Initiate IPFE upgrade (part 2)	<p>Select target ISO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the Upgrade Initiate screen, select the target ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. Click OK to initiate the upgrade. 
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress	<p>Observe the Upgrade State of the IPFE server. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column.</p> 
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each IPFE	Repeat steps 1. through 6. for the next IPFE to be upgraded per Table 16.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If the upgrade of a server fails:	<p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (via ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre> /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log </pre> <p>If any upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the STP server group(s) to upgrade	From the data captured in Table 16, identify the STP server group(s) to upgrade in iteration 4.

Step #	Procedure	Description																							
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of vSTP MP servers	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the link for each vSTP server group to upgrade. For the vSTP servers to be upgraded in iteration 3, verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version. If a server is in Backup Needed state, select the server and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max Ha Role is the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a web interface for software management. At the top, there is a 'Filter*' dropdown and a 'Tasks' dropdown. Below this, there are breadcrumb links: 'NO_SG' > 'SO_SG1'. Underneath, there are more links: 'Entire Site', 'SO_SG1', and 'SO1MP_SG1'. The main content is a table with the following columns: Hostname, Upgrade State, OAM HA Role, Server Role, Function, and Application Version. The table contains one row for the server 'fgtt-so1mp1' with two rows of data for its status.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">fgtt-so1mp1</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>STP</td> <td>8.1.0.0-81.17.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO_NE1</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	fgtt-so1mp1	Backup Needed	Active	MP	STP	8.1.0.0-81.17.0	Warn	N/A	SO_NE1		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																				
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																				
fgtt-so1mp1	Backup Needed	Active	MP	STP	8.1.0.0-81.17.0																				
	Warn	N/A	SO_NE1																						

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>11.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready for the server to be upgraded</p>	<p>This may take a minute if a backup is in progress. Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>The Upgrade Administration screen displays. Navigate to the vSTP MP server group being upgraded.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server)
<p>12.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate vSTP MP upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>Select the Upgrade Server upgrade method.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded. 2. Click Upgrade Server. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> 

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>13.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate vSTP upgrade (part 2)</p>	<p>Select target ISO.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the Upgrade Initiate screen, select the target ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. Click OK to initiate the upgrade. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p> 
<p>14.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress</p>	<p>Observe the Upgrade State of the vSTP MP server. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> 
<p>15.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Repeat for each vSTP server(s).</p>	<p>Repeat steps 10. through 14. for the next vSTP servers to be upgraded per Table 16.</p>
<p>16.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Identify the Standby SBR server(s) to upgrade</p> 	<p>From the data captured in Table 16, identify the SBR server (s) to upgrade in iteration 4.</p> <p>If ASG was used in Upgrade Iteration 3, then the standby SBR server(s) is already upgraded and this step is not required.</p> <p>If a manual upgrade was recommended, use the alternate upgrade procedures provided in Procedure 52 for Standby SBR Server (s) upgrade.</p>


5.3.6 Upgrade Iteration 5

Upgrade iteration 5 continues the upgrade of the site C-level servers. As shown in Table 16, iteration 5 consists of upgrading the active SBR(s).

Table 21 shows the estimated time required to upgrade the remaining C-level servers for iteration 5.

Table 21. Iteration 5 Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 26	0:40-1:00	0:40-1:00	Procedure 26	Standby SBR becomes active; previously active SBR is offline for upgrade



CAUTION

If ASG was used in Upgrade Iteration 3, then the standby SBR server(s) is already upgraded and this step is not required.

If a manual upgrade was recommended, use the alternate upgrade procedures provided in Procedure 52 for Standby SBR Server (s) upgrade.

Procedure 26. Upgrade Iteration 5

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
<p>This procedure upgrades the active SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																						
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Iteration 5	<p>At iteration 5, the active SBR is upgraded, causing the standby to become active.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Tue Feb 07</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG1 IPFE_SG2 IPFE_SG3 IPFE_SG4 MP_SG SBR_SG SS7_SG1 SS7_SG2</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SBR1</td> <td>Accept or Reject Err</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR2</td> <td>Upgrading Unk</td> <td>OOS N/A</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SBR3</td> <td>Accept or Reject Err</td> <td>Spare Spare</td> <td>MP</td> <td>SBR</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SBR1	Accept or Reject Err	Active	MP	SBR	8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0	SBR2	Upgrading Unk	OOS N/A	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	SBR3	Accept or Reject Err	Spare Spare	MP	SBR	8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0				SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
SBR1	Accept or Reject Err	Active	MP	SBR	8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0																																	
SBR2	Upgrading Unk	OOS N/A	MP	SBR	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																																	
SBR3	Accept or Reject Err	Spare Spare	MP	SBR	8.0.0.0.0 80.20.0																																	
			SO1_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.20.0-x86_64.iso																																	
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration	See step 3 for instructions if the upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.																																				

Step #	Procedure	Description
	form to monitor upgrade progress	<p>Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade displays as FAILED.</p> <p>The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. 3. Sequence through the server group links for the server groups being upgraded. Observe the upgrade state of the servers of interest. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column. <p>During the upgrade, the servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down) Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) <p>Database (DB) replication failure alarms may display during an Automated Site Upgrade or during an event that resets multiple servers in parallel. The DB on the child servers is not updated until resolved. Refer to Appendix O to resolve this issue.</p> <p>Wait for the SBR upgrades to complete. The Status Message column displays Success. This step takes approximately 20 to 50 minutes.</p>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If the upgrade of a server fails:	<p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (via ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre> /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log </pre> <p>If any upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>

5.4 Site Post-Upgrade Procedures



The following procedures must be executed at the completion of each SOAM site upgrade:

- Procedure 27 Allow Site Provisioning
- Procedure 28 Site Post-Upgrade Health Check



After all SOAM sites in the topology have completed upgrade, the upgrade may be accepted using the following procedure:

- Procedure 40 Accept Upgrade

The post-upgrade procedures consist of procedures that are performed after all of the site upgrades are complete. The final Health Check of the system collects alarm and status information to verify that the upgrade did not degrade system operation. After an appropriate soak time, the upgrade is accepted.

5.4.1 Allow Site Provisioning

This procedure enables Site Provisioning for the site just upgraded.



CAUTION

Any provisioning changes made to this site before the upgrade is accepted are lost if the upgrade is backed out.

Procedure 27. Allow Site Provisioning

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure allows provisioning for SOAM and MP servers.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Enable site provisioning	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI of the site just upgraded using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Site Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning.

5.4.2 Site Post-Upgrade Health Checks

This section provides procedures to verify the validity and health of the site upgrade.

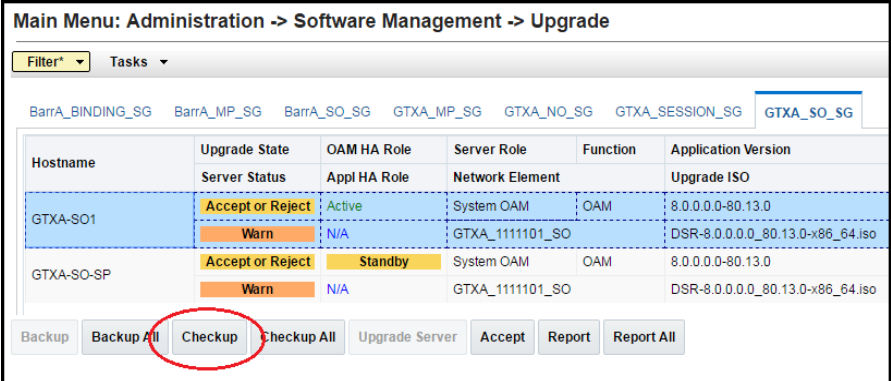
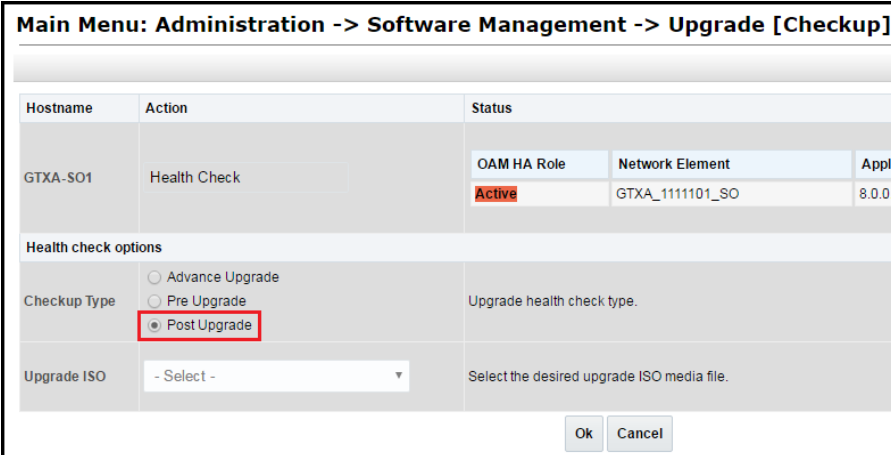
5.4.2.1 Site Post-Upgrade Health Check

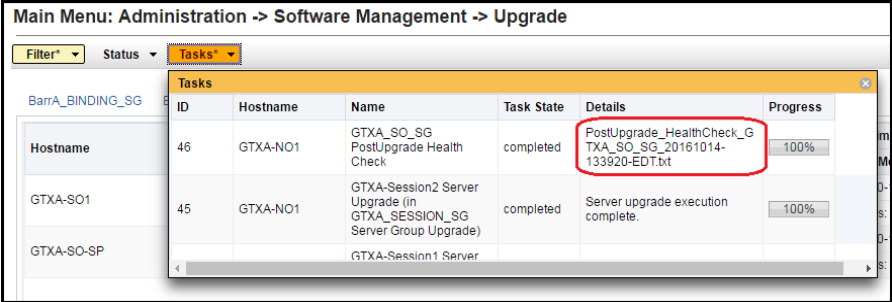
This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, as well as the health and status of the network and servers.

If the **10054 - Device Deployment Failed** alarm displays after the upgrade for any server, see for Appendix S Workaround to Resolve Device Deployment Failed Alarm corrective steps.

Note: If syscheck fails on any server during pre-upgrade checks or in early checks stating that **cpu: FAILURE:: No record in alarm table for FAILURE!**, see Procedure 68.

Procedure 28. Site Post-Upgrade Health Check

Step #	Procedure	Description																																																
<p>This procedure verifies post-upgrade site status.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																																		
1.	<p><input type="checkbox"/> Active NOAM VIP: Run automated post-upgrade health checks</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. Select the SOAM server group link for the site being upgraded. Select the active SOAM.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>GTXA-SO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.13.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>GTXA_1111101_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTXA-SO-SP</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.13.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>GTXA_1111101_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Buttons: Backup, Backup All, Checkup, Checkup All, Upgrade Server, Accept, Report, Report All</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Checkup. Under Health check options, select Post Upgrade. Click OK. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p>  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>GTXA-SO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_1111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade, <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade, <input checked="" type="radio"/> Post Upgrade</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: - Select -</p> <p>Buttons: Ok, Cancel</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Upgrade ISO			GTXA-SO1	Accept or Reject	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0		Warn	N/A	GTXA_1111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso	GTXA-SO-SP	Accept or Reject	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0		Warn	N/A	GTXA_1111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso	Hostname	Action	Status	GTXA-SO1	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_1111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic	Active	GTXA_1111101_SO	8.0.0.0
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																													
Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Upgrade ISO																																															
GTXA-SO1	Accept or Reject	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0																																													
	Warn	N/A	GTXA_1111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																																													
GTXA-SO-SP	Accept or Reject	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0																																													
	Warn	N/A	GTXA_1111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																																													
Hostname	Action	Status																																																
GTXA-SO1	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_1111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic	Active	GTXA_1111101_SO	8.0.0.0																																										
OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic																																																
Active	GTXA_1111101_SO	8.0.0.0																																																

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress for completion</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO Server Group> PostUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. 4. Open the report and review the results. 
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Analyze health check results</p>	<p>Analyze Health Check failure. If the Health Check report status is anything other than “Pass”, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 2. Select the active SOAM tab. 3. Select the UpgradeHealthCheck.log file and click View. 4. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. <p>Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p> <p>If the health check log contains the Unable to execute Health Check on <Active NOAM hostname> message, perform the health checks in Procedure 29.</p>
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SOAM VIP: Export and archive the Diameter configuration data</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Diameter Common > Export. 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by selecting the ALL option for the Export Application. 3. Verify the requested data is exported by clicking Tasks at the top of the screen. 4. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files and download all the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the active NOAM to the client machine. 5. Navigate to Diameter > Maintenance > Applications. 6. Verify Operational Status is Available for all applications.

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM Server: Check if the setup previously has a customer supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with a passphrase, which was renamed before starting with upgrade	If the setup had a customer-supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with passphrase before the start of the upgrade (refer to Procedure 3 and rename the certificate back to the original name.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Compare data to the pre-upgrade health check to verify if the system has degraded after the second maintenance window	Verify that the health check status of the upgraded site as collected from Steps 1 through 4 is the same as the pre-upgrade health checks taken in Section 5.1.2. If system operation is degraded, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

5.4.2.2 Alternate SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, as well as the health and status of the network and servers. This procedure is an alternative to the normal post upgrade health check in Procedure 30.

Procedure 29. Alternate SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies post-upgrade site status.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SOAM CLI: Run/verify SOAM post-upgrade health check status</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use an SSH client to connect to the active SOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM XMI IP address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 5.</p> 2. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck postUpgradeHealthCheckOnSoam</pre> <p>This command creates two files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <SOserver_name>_ComAgentConnStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If any alarms are present in the system:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If the system is PDRA, one additional file is generated:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_SBRStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The FIPS integrity verification test failed message may display when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 3. If the Server <hostname> needs operator attention before upgrade message displays, inspect the Server Status Report to determine the reason for the message. If the Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill message displays in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored. <p>Note: If any server status is not as expected, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p> 4. Keep these reports for future reference. These reports are compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete.

Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: Capture Diameter maintenance status	Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck diameterMaintStatus</pre> This command displays a series of messages providing Diameter Maintenance status. Capture this output and save for later use. Note: The output is also captured in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck.log . Note: The FIPS integrity verification test failed message may display when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: View DA-MP status	1. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck daMpStatus</pre> This command outputs status to the screen for review. Note: The FIPS integrity verification test failed message may display when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored. 2. Verify all peer MPs are available. 3. Note the number of Total Connections Established _____
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Compare data to the pre-upgrade health check to verify if the system has degraded after the second maintenance window	Verify the health check status of the upgraded site as collected in this procedure is the same as the pre-upgrade health checks taken in section 5.1.2. If system operation is degraded, it is recommended to report it to My Oracle Support (MOS).

Note: If another site is to be upgraded, all procedures specified by Table 12 must be executed. However, the user should be aware that mated sites should not be upgraded in the same maintenance window.

5.4.3 Post-Upgrade Procedures

The procedures in this section are to be executed after the site upgrade is verified to be valid and healthy. These procedures should be executed in the maintenance window.

Procedure 30. Post-Upgrade Procedures

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs additional actions that are required after the upgrade is successfully completed. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Enable the signaling firewall for the upgraded site	<p>The firewall enables the DSR to dynamically determine and customize the Linux firewall on each DA-MP server in the DSR Signaling node to allow only the essential network traffic pertaining to the active signaling configuration.</p> <p>There are some limitations related to enabling of signaling firewall in DSR 8.2 and later releases.</p> <p>See section 1.7.3 for more details.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Diameter > Maintenance > Signaling Firewall. 2. Select the Signaling Node that was just upgraded. 3. Click Enable. 4. Click OK to confirm the action. 5. Verify the Admin State changes to Enabled. <p>Note: There may be a short delay while the firewall is enabled on the site.</p>



!!WARNING!!

If this error displays, contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

"Post Upgrade validation failed for <server_name>. Please check server status. Cancelling the upgrade."

ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time	Result	Result Details	Progress
25	Camaro-SO-B Server Upgrade (in Camaro_SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	completed	2018-06-22 07:07:28 EDT	2018-06-22 07:28:09 EDT	0	Server upgrade execution complete.	100%
24	Nova-SO-Sp Server Upgrade (in Camaro_SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	2018-06-22 07:07:12 EDT	2018-06-22 07:42:08 EDT	-1	Post Upgrade validation failed for Nova-SO-Sp. Please check server status. Cancelling the upgrade.	90%

6. Backout Procedure Overview

The procedures provided in this section return the individual servers and the overall DSR system to the source release after an upgrade is aborted. The backout procedures support two options for restoring the source release:

- Emergency backout
- Normal backout

The emergency backout overview is provided in Table 22. These procedures back out the target release software in the fastest possible manner, without regard to traffic impact.

The normal backout overview is provided in Table 23. These procedures back out the target release software in a more controlled manner, sustaining traffic to the extent possible.

All backout procedures are executed inside a maintenance window.

The backout procedure times provided in Table 22 and Table 23 are only estimates as the reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done.

Note: While not specifically covered by this procedure, it may be necessary to re-apply patches to the source release after the backout. If patches are applicable to the source release, verify all patches are on-hand before completing the backout procedures.

Table 22. Emergency Backout Procedure Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 31	0:10-0:30	0:10-0:30	Procedure 31 The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, only estimates are given here. Execution time varies.	None.
Procedure 32	0:01	0:11-0:31	Procedure 32	Disables global provisioning
Procedure 33	See Note	See Note	Procedure 33 Note: Execution time of downgrading entire network is approximately equivalent to execution time taken during upgrade. 0:05 (5 minutes) can be subtracted from total time because ISO Administration is not executed during Backout procedures.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.
Procedure 38	See Note	See Note	Procedure 38 Note: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 34	See Note	See Note	Procedure 34 Note: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.
Procedure 39	0:01-0:05	Varies	Procedure 39	None

Table 23. Normal Backout Procedure Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum		
Procedure 31	0:10-0:30	0:10-0:30	Procedure 31 The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, only estimates are given here. Execution time varies.	None
Procedure 32	0:01	0:11-0:31	Procedure 32	Disables global provisioning
Procedure 35	See Note	See Note	Procedure 35 Note: Execution time of downgrading entire network is approximately equivalent to execution time taken during upgrade. 0:05 (5 minutes) can be subtracted from total time because ISO Administration is not executed during Backout procedures.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.
Procedure 38	See Note	See Note	Procedure 38 Note: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.
Procedure 36	See Note	See Note	Procedure 36 Note: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server.	All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also, backout procedures cause traffic loss.
Procedure 39	0:01-0:05	Varies	Procedure 39	None

6.1 Recovery Procedures

It is recommended to direct upgrade procedure recovery issues to My Oracle Support (MOS). Before executing any of these procedures, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

Execute this section only if there is a problem and it is desired to revert back to the pre-upgrade version of the software.



!!WARNING!!

Before attempting to perform these backout procedures, it is recommended to first contact My Oracle Support (MOS) as described in Appendix Z.

Backout procedures cause traffic loss.

Note: These recovery procedures are provided for the backout of an Upgrade ONLY (i.e., from a failed 8.2 release to the previously installed 7.1.w release). Backout of an initial installation is not supported.

During the backout, servers may have the following expected alarms until the server is completely backed out. The servers may have some or all of the following expected alarms, but are not limited to event IDs:

- Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats)
- Alarm ID = 31109 (Topology config error)
- Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed)
- Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31134 (DB replication to slave failure)
- Alarm ID = 31102 (DB replication from master failure)
- Alarm ID = 31282 (HA management fault)

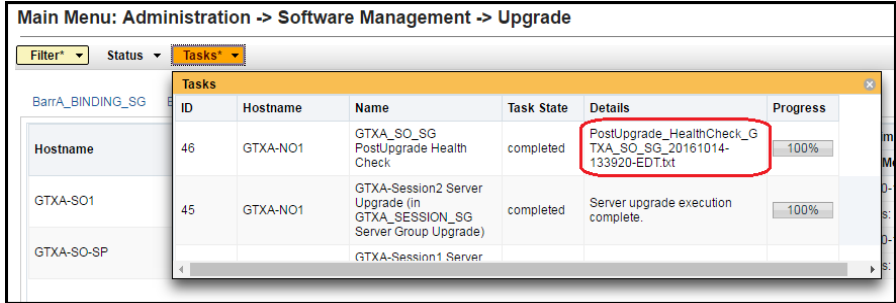
6.2 Backout Health Check

This section provides the procedure to verify that the DSR is ready for backout. The site post-upgrade Health Check is used to perform the backout Health Check.

Procedure 31. Backout Health Check

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>This procedure performs a Health Check on the site prior to backing out the upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description																																														
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Run the automated post-upgrade health checks for backout</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. Select the SOAM server group link for the site being backed out. Select the active SOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG GTXA_SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">GTXA-SO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.13.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>GTXA_111101_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">GTXA-SO-SP</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0-80.13.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>GTXA_111101_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Checkup. Under Health check options, click Post Upgrade. Click OK. <p>Control returns to the Upgrade screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>GTXA-SO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input checked="" type="radio"/> Post Upgrade </p> <p>Upgrade ISO: <input type="text" value="- Select -"/></p> <p>Upgrade health check type. Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	GTXA-SO1	Accept or Reject	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0	Warn	N/A	GTXA_111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso	GTXA-SO-SP	Accept or Reject	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0	Warn	N/A	GTXA_111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso	Hostname	Action	Status	GTXA-SO1	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic	Active	GTXA_111101_SO	8.0.0.0
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																											
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																											
GTXA-SO1	Accept or Reject	Active	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0																																											
	Warn	N/A	GTXA_111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																																											
GTXA-SO-SP	Accept or Reject	Standby	System OAM	OAM	8.0.0.0-80.13.0																																											
	Warn	N/A	GTXA_111101_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																																											
Hostname	Action	Status																																														
GTXA-SO1	Health Check	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Applic</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>GTXA_111101_SO</td> <td>8.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic	Active	GTXA_111101_SO	8.0.0.0																																								
OAM HA Role	Network Element	Applic																																														
Active	GTXA_111101_SO	8.0.0.0																																														

Step #	Procedure	Description																		
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor health check progress for completion</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Tasks option to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO Server Group> PostUpgrade Health Check. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column displays a hyperlink to the Health Check report. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results.  <p>The screenshot shows a 'Tasks' window with the following data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>46</td> <td>GTXA-NO1</td> <td>GTXA_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_GTXA_SO_SG_20161014-133920-EDT.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45</td> <td>GTXA-NO1</td> <td>GTXA-Session2 Server Upgrade (in GTXA_SESSION_SG Server Group Upgrade)</td> <td>completed</td> <td>Server upgrade execution complete.</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress	46	GTXA-NO1	GTXA_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_GTXA_SO_SG_20161014-133920-EDT.txt	100%	45	GTXA-NO1	GTXA-Session2 Server Upgrade (in GTXA_SESSION_SG Server Group Upgrade)	completed	Server upgrade execution complete.	100%
ID	Hostname	Name	Task State	Details	Progress															
46	GTXA-NO1	GTXA_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_GTXA_SO_SG_20161014-133920-EDT.txt	100%															
45	GTXA-NO1	GTXA-Session2 Server Upgrade (in GTXA_SESSION_SG Server Group Upgrade)	completed	Server upgrade execution complete.	100%															
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Analyze health check results</p>	<p>Analyze health check report for failures. If the Health Check report status is anything other than Pass, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. Select the active SOAM tab. Select the UpgradeHealthCheck.log file and click View. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. <p>Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p>																		
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Identify IP addresses of servers to be backed out</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. Select each server group link, making note of the application version of each server. Based on the Application Version column, identify all the hostnames that need to be backed out. Navigate to Configuration > Servers. Using the data recorded in Table 5, note the XMI/iLO/LOM IP addresses of all the hostnames to be backed out. These are required to access the server when performing the backout. <p>The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. The backout procedures cause traffic loss. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) as stated in the Warning box.</p>																		

Step #	Procedure	Description																																																
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify backup archive files	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. For each server to be backed out, select the server tab on the Files screen. Verify the two backup archive files, created in section 3.4.4, are present on every server that is to be backed out. These archive files have the format: Backup.<application>.<server>.FullDBParts.<role>.<date_time>.UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.<application>.<server>.FullRunEnv.<role>.<date_time>.UPG.tar.bz2 																																																
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Verify disk usage	<p>Starting with the active SOAM, log into each server to be backed out to verify the disk usage is within acceptable limits.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active SOAM. ssh admusr@<server IP> password: <enter password> Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server. Enter the command: [admusr@EVO-NO-1 ~]\$ df Sample output (abridged): <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Filesystem</th> <th>1K-blocks</th> <th>Used</th> <th>Available</th> <th>Use%</th> <th>Mounted on</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_root</td> <td>999320</td> <td>294772</td> <td>652120</td> <td>32%</td> <td>/</td> </tr> <tr> <td>tmpfs</td> <td>12303460</td> <td>0</td> <td>12303460</td> <td>0%</td> <td>/dev/shm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>/dev/vda1</td> <td>245679</td> <td>41967</td> <td>190605</td> <td>19%</td> <td>/boot</td> </tr> <tr> <td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_tmp</td> <td>999320</td> <td>1548</td> <td>945344</td> <td>1%</td> <td>/tmp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_usr</td> <td>5029504</td> <td>2962552</td> <td>1804824</td> <td>63%</td> <td>/usr</td> </tr> <tr> <td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var</td> <td>999320</td> <td>558260</td> <td>388632</td> <td>59%</td> <td>/var</td> </tr> <tr> <td>/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc</td> <td>3997376</td> <td>2917284</td> <td>870380</td> <td>78%</td> <td>/var/TKLC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> Observe the line for the /var and /usr partition. If the Use% column is 70% or less, this procedure is complete. Continue with the back out per Table 22 (Emergency) or Table 23 (Normal). If the Use% of the /var and /usr partition is at 70% or greater, search the partition for files that can be safely deleted. Use extreme caution in selecting files to be deleted. The deletion of critical system files could severely impair the DSR functionality. Repeat this step for all servers to be backed out. 	Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Available	Use%	Mounted on	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_root	999320	294772	652120	32%	/	tmpfs	12303460	0	12303460	0%	/dev/shm	/dev/vda1	245679	41967	190605	19%	/boot	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_tmp	999320	1548	945344	1%	/tmp	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_usr	5029504	2962552	1804824	63%	/usr	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var	999320	558260	388632	59%	/var	/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc	3997376	2917284	870380	78%	/var/TKLC
Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Available	Use%	Mounted on																																													
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_root	999320	294772	652120	32%	/																																													
tmpfs	12303460	0	12303460	0%	/dev/shm																																													
/dev/vda1	245679	41967	190605	19%	/boot																																													
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_tmp	999320	1548	945344	1%	/tmp																																													
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_usr	5029504	2962552	1804824	63%	/usr																																													
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var	999320	558260	388632	59%	/var																																													
/dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc	3997376	2917284	870380	78%	/var/TKLC																																													

6.3 Disable Global Provisioning

The following procedure disables provisioning on the NOAM. This step ensures no changes are made to the database while the NOAMs and sites are backed out. Provisioning is re-enabled once the NOAM upgrade is complete.

Procedure 32. Disable Global Provisioning

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure disables provisioning for the NOAM servers, prior to upgrade. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Disable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Disable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 002] – Global provisioning has been manually disabled. The active NOAM server has the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)

6.4 Perform Emergency Backout


EMERGENCY SITE BACKOUT

Use this section to perform an emergency backout of a DSR upgrade.

The procedures in this section perform a backout of all servers to restore the source release. An emergency backout can only be executed once all necessary corrective setup steps have been taken to prepare for the backout. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) as stated in the warning box in Section 6.1, to verify that all corrective setup steps have been taken.

6.4.1 Emergency Site Backout



The procedures in this section backout all servers at a specific site without regard to traffic impact.




!!WARNING!!

Executing this procedure results in a total loss of all traffic being processed by this DSR. Traffic being processed by the mate DSR is not affected.

Procedure 33. Emergency Site Backout

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure backs out the DSR application software from multiple B- and C-level servers for a specific site. Any server requiring backout can be included: SOAMs, DA-MPs, IPFEs, and SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Identify all servers that require backout (within a site)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. 3. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. 4. Select each server group link, making note of the application version of the servers. 5. Identify the servers in the respective server groups with the target release Application Version value. These servers were previously upgraded but now require backout. 6. Make note of these servers. They have been identified for backout. 7. Before initiating the backout procedure, remove all new blades and/or sites configured after upgrade was started.
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SOAM VIP: Disable site provisioning for the site to be backed out</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Disable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box displays at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 004] – Site provisioning has been manually disabled. The active SOAM server has the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
 <p>!!WARNING!! Step 3 results in a total loss of all traffic being processed by this DSR.</p>		
<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Back out all C-level servers, as applicable</p>	<p>For all configurations: Back out all C-level servers (IPFEs, SBRs, SBRs, and DA-MPs) identified in step 1: Execute Procedure 38.</p>
<p>4. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Additional post back out steps</p> 	<p>After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the SBR server by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps.</p> <p>Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the standby and spare SOAM servers, as applicable	Back out the standby and spare DSR SOAM servers: If standby and spare SOAM servers are present: Execute Procedure 38. If only a spare SOAM server is present: Execute Procedure 37.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the active DSR SOAM server	Execute Procedure 37.
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional post backout steps 	After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the SOAM server(s) by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Enable site provisioning	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Site Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning.


Note: If another site is to be backed out, follow all procedures in Table 22 in another maintenance window.

6.4.2 Emergency NOAM Backout

The procedures in this section backout the NOAM servers.

Procedure 34. Emergency NOAM Backout

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure is used to perform an emergency backout of the DSR application software from the NOAM servers. This procedure backs out the application software as quickly as possible, without regard to operational impact.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the standby DR NOAM server (if equipped)	Execute Procedure 37.

Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the active DR NOAM server (now the standby) (if equipped)	Execute Procedure 37.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the standby DSR NOAM server (as applicable)	Execute Procedure 37.
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the active DSR NOAM server (now the standby)	Execute Procedure 37.
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional post backout steps 	After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the NOAM server(s) by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Provisioning. 4. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning.

Step #	Procedure	Description
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Remove Ready state for any backed out server	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Servers. If any backed-out server Application Status is Disabled, then navigate to the server row and click Restart. Navigate to Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. If any backed-out server shows an Upgrade State of Ready or Success, then select that server and click Complete Upgrade. Otherwise, skip this step. Click OK. This removes the Forced Standby designation for the backed-out server. <p>Note: Due to backout being initiated from the command line instead of through the GUI, the following SOAP error may appear in the GUI banner.</p> <pre>SOAP error while clearing upgrade status of hostname=[frame10311b6] ip=[172.16.1.28]</pre> <p>It is safe to ignore this error message.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Verify the Application Version value for servers has been downgraded to the original release version.

6.5 Perform Normal Backout

NORMAL SITE BACKOUT

Use this section to perform a normal backout of a DSR upgrade


The following procedures to perform a normal backout can only be executed once all necessary corrective setup steps have been taken to prepare for the backout. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS), as stated in the warning box in Section 6.1, to verify that all corrective setup steps have been taken.

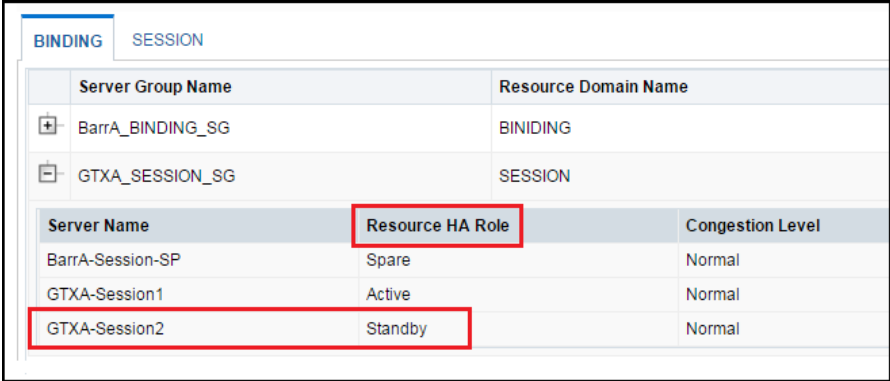
6.5.1 Normal Site Backout



The procedures in this section backs out all servers at a specific site.

Procedure 35. Normal Site Backout

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>This procedure backs out an upgrade of the DSR application software from multiple servers in the network. Any server requiring backout can be included: SOAMs, DA-MPs, IPFEs, and SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Identify all servers that require backout (within a site)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration >Software Management > Upgrade. 3. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. 4. Select each server group link, making note of the application version of each server. 5. Identify the servers in the respective Server Groups with the target release Application Version value. These servers were previously upgraded but now require Backout. 6. Make note of these servers. They have been identified for backout. 7. Before initiating the backout procedure, remove all new blades and/or sites configured after upgrade was started.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Disable site provisioning for the site to be backed out	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Disable Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box displays at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 004] – Site provisioning has been manually disabled. The active SOAM server has the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the first set of C-level servers, as applicable	<p>Note: In a PCA System, the spare SBR server is located at the mated site of the site being backed out.</p> <p>These servers can be backed out in parallel (as applicable):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ½ of all DA-MPs for N+0 (multi-active) configuration • Standby SBR(s) • Spare SBR(s) • ½ of all IPFEs <p>Execute Procedure 37 for each standby/spare C-level server identified.</p>
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column;"> <div style="font-size: 24px; font-weight: bold; color: red; margin-bottom: 5px;">!!WARNING!!</div> <div style="font-size: 14px; color: red;">Failure to comply with step 4 and step 5 may result in the loss of PCA traffic, resulting in service impact.</div> </div> </div>		

Step #	Procedure	Description																																
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify standby SBR server status</p>	<p>If the server being backed out is the standby SBR, execute this step. Otherwise, continue with step 6.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to SBR > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. 2. Do not proceed to step 6 until the Resource HA Role for the standby server has a status of Standby.  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">BINDING</th> <th colspan="2">SESSION</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Group Name</th> <th colspan="3">Resource Domain Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BarrA_BINDING_SG</td> <td colspan="3">BINDING</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTXA_SESSION_SG</td> <td colspan="3">SESSION</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Name</th> <th>Resource HA Role</th> <th colspan="2">Congestion Level</th> </tr> <tr> <td>BarrA-Session-SP</td> <td>Spare</td> <td colspan="2">Normal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTXA-Session1</td> <td>Active</td> <td colspan="2">Normal</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTXA-Session2</td> <td>Standby</td> <td colspan="2">Normal</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	BINDING		SESSION		Server Group Name	Resource Domain Name			BarrA_BINDING_SG	BINDING			GTXA_SESSION_SG	SESSION			Server Name	Resource HA Role	Congestion Level		BarrA-Session-SP	Spare	Normal		GTXA-Session1	Active	Normal		GTXA-Session2	Standby	Normal	
BINDING		SESSION																																
Server Group Name	Resource Domain Name																																	
BarrA_BINDING_SG	BINDING																																	
GTXA_SESSION_SG	SESSION																																	
Server Name	Resource HA Role	Congestion Level																																
BarrA-Session-SP	Spare	Normal																																
GTXA-Session1	Active	Normal																																
GTXA-Session2	Standby	Normal																																
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify bulk download is complete between the active SBR in the server group to the standby and spare SBRs</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Alarm & Event > View History. 2. Export the Event log using the following filter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Server Group: Choose the SBR group that is in upgrade Display Filter: Event ID = 31127 – DB Replication Audit Complete Collection Interval: X hours ending in current time, where X is the time from upgrade completion of the standby and spare servers to the current time. 3. Wait for the following instances of Event 31127: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 for the Standby Binding SBR server • 1 for the Standby Session SBR server • 1 for the Spare Binding SBR server • 1 for the Spare Session SBR server • 1 for the 2nd Spare Binding SBR server, if equipped • 1 for the 2nd Spare Session SBR server, if equipped <p>Note: There is an expected loss of traffic depending on size of the bulk download. This must be noted along with events captured.</p>																																
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Back out remaining C-level servers, as applicable</p>	<p>These servers can be backed out in parallel (as applicable)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ½ of all DA-MPs for N+0 (multi-active) configuration • Active SBR(s) • ½ of all IPFEs <p>Execute Procedure 37 for each C-level server identified.</p>																																


Step #	Procedure	Description
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional post backout steps 	After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the SBR server(s) by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the standby DSR SOAM server	Execute Procedure 37.
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out spare DSR SOAM server, if applicable	Note: The spare server is located at the mated site of the site being backed out. Execute Procedure 37.
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out active DSR SOAM server	Execute Procedure 37.
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional post backout steps 	After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the SOAM server(s) by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps. Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM VIP: Enable site provisioning	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Site Provisioning. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking OK on the screen. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning.

Note: If another site is to be backed out, follow all procedures in Table 23 in another maintenance window.

6.5.2 Normal NOAM Backout

The procedures in this section backout the NOAM servers.

Procedure 36. Normal NOAM Backout

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure is used to perform a normal backout of the DSR application software from the NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out the standby DR NOAM server (if equipped)	Execute Procedure 37.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out other DR NOAM server (if equipped)	Execute Procedure 37.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out standby DSR NOAM server (as applicable)	Execute Procedure 37.
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Back out active DSR NOAM server	Execute Procedure 37.
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional post backout steps 	After all the servers in a particular server group are backed out, revert back the changes for the NOAM server(s) by executing Appendix L Additional Post-Backout Steps.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Database. 3. Click Enable Provisioning. 4. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning.

6.6 Back Out Single Server

This section provides the procedures to back out the application software on a single server.



CAUTION

This procedure is executed as a component of the Emergency Backout Procedure (Section 6.4) or the Normal Backout Procedure (Section 6.5). This procedure should never be executed as a standalone procedure.

Procedure 37. Back Out Single Server

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure backs out the upgrade of application software.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Prepare the server for backout</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. 3. Select the server group link containing the server to be backed out. 4. Verify the Upgrade State is Accept or Reject. <p>Make the server Backout Ready as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. 6. Click Edit. 7. Select the server to be backed out and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Standby (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). <p>Note: When the active NOAM is the server being backed out, click OK to initiate an HA switchover and cause the GUI session to log out.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Click OK. <p>Note: If the server being backed out is the active NOAM and HA switchover does not happen, and the OAM HA Role of the NOAMP server to be backed out on the HA status screen is still Active, then you have encountered a known issue. Apply the workaround using Appendix Q to have the NOAMP HA switchover.</p> <p>*** Critical *** Do NOT omit this step</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. Log out of the GUI, clear the browser cache, and log back into the active NOAM via the VIP before continuing. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared. 10. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server on the HA Status screen. 11. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. 12. Select the server to back out and click Stop. 13. Click OK to confirm the operation and verify the Appl State changes to Disabled.


Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>14. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>15. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out.</p> <p>16. Select the link of the server group containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Backout Ready.</p> <p>Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.</p>
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: SSH to server</p>	<p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g., ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: If direct access to the IMI is not available, or if TVOE is installed on a blade, then access the target server via a connection through the active NOAM. SSH to the active NOAM XMI first. From there, SSH to the target server's IMI address.</p>
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Execute the backout</p>	<p>Execute this command to find the state of the server to be backed out:</p> <pre>\$ ha.mystate</pre> <p>In this example, the HA state is Stb (highlighted).</p> <pre>[admusr@MauiNOAM1 ~]\$ ha.mystate resourceId role node DC subResources lastUpdate ----- DbReplication Act/Stb A2260.016 0 0727:005354.362 VIP Act/Stb A2260.016 0 0727:005354.364 CacdProcessRes Act/Stb A2260.016 0 0727:005803.864 CAFM_HELP_Proc Act/OOS A2260.016 0 0727:005352.696 DSROAM_Proc Act/Stb A2260.016 0 0727:005803.996 CAFM_PSF_Proc Act/Stb A2260.016 0 0727:005422.602</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /var/TKLC/backout/reject</pre> <p>Note: If back out asks to continue, answer y.</p> <p>The reject command creates a no-hang-up shell session, so the command continues to execute if the user session is lost.</p> <p>Sample output of the reject script:</p> <pre>Applications Enabled. Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig Remove isometadata (appRev) file from upgrade Reverting platform revision file RCS_VERSION=1.4 Creating boot script: /etc/rc3.d/S89backout Rebuilding RPM database. This may take a moment... rpmdb_load: /var/lib/rpm/Packages: unexpected file type or format Cleaning up chroot environment... A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre>
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Backout proceeds</p>	<p>Many informational messages display to the terminal screen as the backout proceeds.</p> <p>After backout is complete, the server automatically reboots.</p>
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: SSH to server</p>	<p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g., ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Restore the full DB run environment	<p>Execute the backout_restore utility to restore the full database run environment:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/tmp/backout_restore</pre> <p>If asked to proceed, answer y.</p> <p>Note: In some incremental upgrade scenarios, the backout_restore file is not found in the /var/tmp directory, resulting in the following error message:</p> <pre>/var/tmp/backout_restore: No such file or directory</pre> <p>If this message occurs, copy the file from /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin to /var/tmp and repeat sub-step 1.</p> <p>The backout_restore command creates a no-hang-up shell session, so the command continues to execute if the user session is lost.</p> <p>If the restore was successful, the following displays:</p> <pre>Success: Full restore of COMCOL run env has completed. Return to the backout procedure document for further instruction.</pre> <p>If an error is encountered and reported by the utility, it is recommended to consult with My Oracle Support (MOS) for further instructions.</p>
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify the backout	<p>1. Examine the output of the following commands to determine if any errors were reported:</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyUpgrade</pre> <p>Note: The verifyUpgrade command detected errors that occurred in the initial upgrade and during the backout. Disregard the initial upgrade errors.</p> <p>Note: Disregard the TKLCplat.sh error:</p> <pre>[root@NO1 ~]# verifyUpgrade ERROR: TKLCplat.sh is required by upgrade.sh! ERROR: Could not load shell library! ERROR: LIB: /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/verifyUpgrade/upgrade.sh ERROR: RC: 1</pre> <p>Also, disregard this error:</p> <pre>ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1513202476::zip error: Nothing to do! /usr/share/tomcat6/webapps/ohw.war</pre> <p>This command displays the current sw rev on the server:</p> <pre>\$ appRev Install Time: Wed Apr 4 05:03:13 2018 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.7.0.0.0-88.68.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.7.0.0.0_88.68.0-OracleLinux6.10-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.10</p> <p>2. Enter this command</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyBackout</pre> <p>The verifyBackout command searches the upgrade log and report all errors found.</p> <p>3. If the backout was successful (no errors or failures reported), then proceed to step 8.</p> <p>4. If the backout failed with the following error, this error can be ignored and the backout may continue.</p> <pre>ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1485165801::ERROR: <rpm name>-7.2.14-7.2.0.0.0_72.23.0: Failure running command '/usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/eclipseHelp reconfig'</pre> <p>Also, disregard following error.</p> <pre>ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1513202476::zip error: Nothing to do! /usr/share/tomcat6/webapps/ohw.war</pre> <p>5. If the backout failed with the following error, refer to Appendix Y for the workaround:</p> <pre>Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig ERROR: Partially installed package was found: ERROR: TKLCdsr.x86_64 ERROR: Partial packages exist! ERROR: Partial packages must be fixed before re-trying an upgrade!</pre> <p>Remove isometadata (appRev) file from upgrade Restore original initrd images Reverting platform revision file RCS_VERSION=1.12 ERROR: Backing out changes from BACKOUT_SERVER on backwards... ERROR: Backout was unsuccessful!!!</p> <pre>ERROR: Trouble when running backout command! ERROR: CMD: /var/TKLC/backout/ugwrap --backout</pre>


Step #	Procedure	Description
		<pre> ERROR: Failed to reject upgrade. Rebuilding RPM database. This may take a moment... rpmdb_load: /var/lib/rpm/Packages: unexpected file type or format Cleaning up chroot environment... Stopping remoteExec background process Shutting down /var/TKLC/backout/remoteExec... /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/savelogs_plat logs: 1530516317::ERROR: TKLCdpi-8.0.33-8.0.1.0.0_80.28.0: Adding the DSR helpset failed! 1530516320::error: %post (TKLCdpi-0:8.0.33- 8.0.1.0.0_80.28.0.x86_64) scriptlet failed, exit status 1 </pre> <p>6. If the backout failed with the following error:</p> <pre> ERROR: The upgrade log does not exist! </pre> <p>Examine the upgrade log at /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log for errors that occurred during the backout.</p> <p>If the backout failed due to errors found in the upgrade log, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for further instructions.</p>
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Reboot the server	<p>Enter this command to reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>This step can take several minutes.</p>
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify OAM services restart (NOAM/SOAM only)	<p>If the server being backed out is a NOAM or SOAM, perform this step; otherwise proceed to step 10.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Wait several (approximately 6 minutes) minutes for a reboot to complete before attempting to log back into the server. 2. SSH to the server and log in. <pre> login as: admusr password: <enter password> </pre> 3. Execute the following command to verify the httpd service is running. <pre>\$ sudo service httpd status</pre> <p>The expected output displays httpd is running (the process IDs are variable so the list of numbers can be ignored):</p> <pre>httpd <process IDs will be listed here> is running...</pre> <p>If httpd is not running, repeat sub-steps 3 for a few minutes. If httpd is still not running after 3 minutes, then services have failed to restart. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for further instructions.</p> 4. Verify if the file id_dsa has required ownership: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the ownership of the file: <pre>sudo ls -ltr /home/awadmin/.ssh/</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>The file permission should be defined as shown:</p> <pre>[admsr@HPC-NO1 ~]\$ sudo ls -lrt /home/awadmin/.ssh/ total 20 -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 1281 Sep 27 16:19 config -rw-r----- 1 awadmin awadm 605 Nov 18 13:20 id_dsa.pub -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 668 Nov 18 13:20 id_dsa -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 7275 Nov 18 18:09 authorized_keys</pre> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. If the file ownership is not set for awadmin, then change the permission: <pre>sudo chown awadmin:awadm /home/awadmin/.ssh/id_dsa</pre> <li>3. Verify file ownership is changed to awadmin awadm.
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify server state is correct after back out	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade to observe the server upgrade status. <li>2. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. <li>3. Select the link of the server group containing the server being backed out. <p>If the server status is Not Ready, proceed to the next step; otherwise, proceed to step 12.</p>
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Change/Correct the Upgrade State on backed out server to Ready	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. <li>2. Click Edit. <li>3. Select the backed out server and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Active (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). <li>4. Click OK. <li>5. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server on the HA Status screen. <li>6. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. <li>7. Select the server being backed out and click Restart. <li>8. Click OK to confirm the operation. <li>9. Verify the Appl State updates to Enabled. <li>10. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. <li>11. Select the tab of the server group containing the server to be backed out. <li>12. Verify the Upgrade State is now Ready. <p>It may take a couple minutes for the grid to update.</p>
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify application version is correct for the backed out server	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. <li>2. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. <li>3. Select the link of the server group containing the server that was backed out. <li>4. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been downgraded to the original release version.

Step #	Procedure	Description
13. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional backout steps 	To support backout for major upgrade paths on the NOAM, SOAM, and SBR server(s), execute Appendix K (Additional Backout Steps).

6.7 Back Out Multiple Servers

This section provides the procedures to backout the application software on multiple servers.



CAUTION

This procedure is executed as a component of the Emergency Backout Procedure (Section 6.4) or the Normal Backout Procedure (Section 6.5). This procedure should never be executed as a standalone procedure.

Procedure 38. Back Out Multiple Servers


Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure backs out the upgrade of DSR 8.5 application software for multiple servers. Any server requiring a backout can be included: DA-MPs, IPFEs, and SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Prepare the server for backout</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Select the server group tab containing the server to be backed out. 3. Verify the Upgrade State is Accept or Reject. <p>Make the server Backout Ready as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. 5. Click Edit. 6. Select the server to back out and select a Max Allowed HA Role value of Standby (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). <p>Note: When the active NOAM is the server being upgraded, click OK to initiate an HA switchover and cause the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Click OK. 8. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server on the HA Status screen. 9. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. 10. Select the server to back out and click Stop.

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>11. Click OK to confirm the operation and verify the Appl State changed to Disabled.</p> <p>12. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>13. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out.</p> <p>14. Select the tab of the server group containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Backout Ready.</p> <p>Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.</p>
2.	Server CLI: Log into the server(s)	Use an SSH client to connect to the server (for example, ssh, putty): <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: If direct access to the IMI is not available, then access the target server via a connection through the active NOAM. SSH to the active NOAM XMI first. From there, SSH to the target server's IMI address.</p>

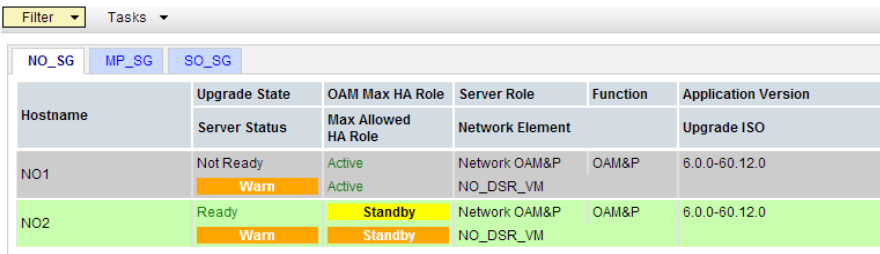
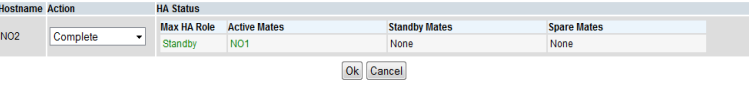
Step #	Procedure	Description
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Execute the backout	<p>Determine the state of the server to be backed out. The server role must be either Standby or Spare.</p> <p>Execute following command to find the server role :</p> <pre>\$ ha.mystate</pre> <p>In this example output, the HA state is Standby.</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]\$ ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.435 VIP Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.438 SbrBBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrBindingRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSessionRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 CacdProcessRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 DA_MP_Leader OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.917 DSR_SLDB OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 VIP_DA_MP OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 EXGSTACK_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 DSR_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 CAPM_HELP_Proc Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.272 DSROAM_Proc OOS B2435.024 0 0128:081123.951</pre> <p>If the state of the server is Active, then return to step 1.</p> <p>Execute the reject command to initiate the backout:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/TKLC/backout/reject</pre> <p>Note: If back out asks to continue, answer y.</p> <p>The reject command creates a no-hang-up shell session, so the command continues to execute if the user session is lost.</p> <p>Sample output of the reject script:</p> <pre>Applications Enabled. Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig Remove isometadata (appRev) file from upgrade Reverting platform revision file RCS_VERSION=1.4 Creating boot script: /etc/rc3.d/S89backout Rebuilding RPM database. This may take a moment... rpmdb_load: /var/lib/rpm/Packages: unexpected file type or format Cleaning up chroot environment... A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Backout proceeds	<p>Many informational messages display to the terminal screen as the backout proceeds.</p> <p>After backout is complete, the server automatically reboots.</p>
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each server to be backed out	Repeat steps 1 through 4 for each server to be backed out.

Step #	Procedure	Description
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Log into the server	Use an SSH client to connect to the server (for example, ssh, putty): ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password>
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Restore the full DB run environment	Execute the backout_restore utility to restore the full database run environment: \$ sudo /var/tmp/backout_restore If asked to proceed, answer y . Note: In some incremental upgrade scenarios, the backout_restore file is not found in the /var/tmp directory, resulting in the following error message: /var/tmp/backout_restore: No such file or directory If this message occurs, copy the file from /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin to /var/tmp and repeat sub-step 1. The backout_restore command creates a no-hang-up shell session, so the command continues to execute if the user session is lost. If the restore was successful, the following displays: Success: Full restore of COMCOL run env has completed. Return to the backout procedure document for further instruction. If an error is encountered and reported by the utility, it is recommended to consult with My Oracle Support (MOS) by referring to Appendix U of this document for further instructions.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify the backout	1. Examine the output of the following commands to determine if any errors were reported: \$ sudo verifyUpgrade Note: The verifyUpgrade command detected errors that occurred in the initial upgrade and during the backout. Disregard the initial upgrade errors. Note: Disregard the TKLCplat.sh error: [root@NO1 ~]# verifyUpgrade ERROR: TKLCplat.sh is required by upgrade.sh! ERROR: Could not load shell library! ERROR: LIB: /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/verifyUpgrade/upgrade.sh ERROR: RC: 1 Also, disregard following error. ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1513202476::zip error: Nothing to do! /usr/share/tomcat6/webapps/ohw.war This command displays the current sw rev on the server: \$ appRev Install Time: Wed Apr 4 05:03:13 2018 Product Name: DSR

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<pre> Product Release: 8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.7.0.0.0-88.68.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.7.0.0.0_88.68.0- OracleLinux6.10-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.10 </pre> <p>2. Enter this command</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyBackout</pre> <p>The verifyBackout command searches the upgrade log and report all errors found.</p> <p>3. If the backout was successful (no errors or failures reported), then proceed to step 9.</p> <p>4. If the backout failed with the following error, this error can be ignored and the backout may continue.</p> <pre> ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1485165801::ERROR: <rpm name>-7.2.14- 7.2.0.0.0_72.23.0: Failure running command '/usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/eclipseHelp reconfig' </pre> <p>Also, Disregard following error too</p> <pre> ERROR: Upgrade log (/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log) reports errors! ERROR: 1513202476::zip error: Nothing to do! /usr/share/tomcat6/webapps/ohw.war </pre> <p>5. If the backout failed with the following error:</p> <pre>ERROR: The upgrade log does not exist!</pre> <p>Examine the upgrade log at /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log for errors that occurred during the backout.</p> <p>6. If the backout failed due to errors found in the upgrade log, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for further instructions.</p>
9.	Server CLI: Reboot the server	<p>Enter the following command to reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>This step can take several minutes.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify OAM services restart (NOAM/SOAM only)	<p>If the server being backed out is a NOAM or SOAM, perform this step; otherwise proceed to step 11.</p> <p>Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Wait several (approximately 6 minutes) minutes for a reboot to complete before attempting to log back into the server. 2. SSH to the server and log in. <pre>login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> 3. Execute the following command to verify the httpd service is running. <pre>\$ sudo service httpd status</pre> <p>The expected output displays httpd is running (the process IDs are variable so the list of numbers can be ignored):</p> <pre>httpd <process IDs will be listed here> is running...</pre> <p>If httpd is not running, repeat sub-steps 3 and 4 for a few minutes. If httpd is still not running after 3 minutes, then services have failed to restart. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for further instructions.</p> 4. Verify if the file id_dsa has required ownership: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the ownership of the file: <pre>ls -ltr /home/awadmin/.ssh/</pre> <p>The file permission should be defined as shown:</p> <pre>[admusr@HPC-NO1 ~]\$ sudo ls -lrt /home/awadmin/.ssh/ total 20 -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 1281 Sep 27 16:19 config -rw-r----- 1 awadmin awadm 605 Nov 18 13:20 id_dsa.pub -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 668 Nov 18 13:20 id_dsa -rw----- 1 awadmin awadm 7275 Nov 18 18:09 authorized_keys</pre> 2. If the file ownership is not set for awadmin, then change the permission: <pre>sudo chown awadmin:awadm /home/awadmin/.ssh/id_dsa</pre> 3. Verify file ownership is changed to awadmin awadm.
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Additional backout steps 	To support backout for major upgrade paths, execute Appendix K (Additional Backout Steps).
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for each server backed out	Repeat steps 6 through 11 for each server backed out.
13. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify server state is correct after back out	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade to observe the server upgrade status. 2. If the active NOAM is on release 8.0 or later, and the server status is Not Ready, proceed to the next step; otherwise, proceed to step 17.

Step #	Procedure	Description																		
14. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Change/Correct the Upgrade State on backed out server to Ready	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. Click Edit. Select the backed out server and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Active (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). Click OK. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server on the HA Status screen. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. Select the server being backed out and click Restart. Click OK to confirm the operation. Verify the Appl State updates to Enabled. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the tab of the server group containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Ready. Proceed to step 17. to complete the procedure. 																		
15. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Remove Upgrade Ready status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. If the servers just backed-out show an Appl State of Enabled, then multi-select the server rows and click Stop. Click OK to confirm the operation. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Server</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Filter ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">Network Element</th> <th style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">Server Hostname</th> <th style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">Appl State</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>EVONOAMP1</td> <td>EVO-NO-1</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EVONOAMP1</td> <td>EVO-NO-2</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0ffe0;"> <td>EVOSOAMNE</td> <td>EVO-SO-Sp</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0ffe0;"> <td>EVOSOAMNE</td> <td>EVO-SO-1</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0ffe0;"> <td>EVOSOAMNE</td> <td>EVO-SO-2</td> <td>Enabled</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;">⇌</p> <p> <input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input type="button" value="Reboot"/> <input type="button" value="NTP Sync"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </p> </div>	Network Element	Server Hostname	Appl State	EVONOAMP1	EVO-NO-1	Enabled	EVONOAMP1	EVO-NO-2	Enabled	EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-Sp	Enabled	EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-1	Enabled	EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-2	Enabled
Network Element	Server Hostname	Appl State																		
EVONOAMP1	EVO-NO-1	Enabled																		
EVONOAMP1	EVO-NO-2	Enabled																		
EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-Sp	Enabled																		
EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-1	Enabled																		
EVOSOAMNE	EVO-SO-2	Enabled																		

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>16.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Correct upgrade status on the backed out server</p>	<p>Correct the upgrade status on the backed out server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. If the servers just backed out show an Upgrade State of Ready or Success, then select the backed-out server and click Complete. If the servers just backed out show Upgrade State of Not Ready, then proceed to the next step. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Leave the Action set to the default value of Complete on the Upgrade Complete screen. Click OK. This updates the Max Allowed HA Role of the backed-out server to active, which causes the server's Upgrade State to change to Not Ready. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Complete]</p>  <p>The following SOAP error may appear in the GUI banner: SOAP error while clearing upgrade status of hostname=[frame10311b6] ip=[172.16.1.28] It is safe to ignore this error message.</p>
<p>17.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify application version is correct for the backed out server</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the SOAM tab of the site being backed out. Select the link of the server group containing the server that was backed out. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been downgraded to the original release version.

6.8 Post-Backout Health Check

This procedure is used to determine the health and status of the DSR network and servers following the backout of the entire system.

Procedure 39. Post-Backout Health Check

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs a basic health check of the DSR to verify the health of the system following a backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify server status is normal	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server. 3. Verify Server Status is Normal (Norm) for Alarm (Alm), Database (DB) and Processes (Proc). 4. Do not proceed with the upgrade if any server status is not Norm. 5. Do not proceed with the upgrade if there are any Major or Critical alarms. <p>Refer to Appendix J for details.</p> <p>Note: It is recommended to troubleshoot if any server status is not Norm. A backout should return the servers to their pre-upgrade status.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Log all current alarms in the system	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 2. Click Report to generate an Alarms report. 3. Save the report and print the report. Keep these copies for future reference.

6.9 IDIH Backout

The procedures in this section back out the Oracle, Application, and Mediation servers to the previous release.

6.9.1 Oracle Server Backout

Backout of Oracle Server is not supported for release 7.1 or later.

The Oracle server is backed out using the disaster recovery procedure documented in [5].

6.9.2 Mediation and Application Server Backout

The Mediation and Application servers are backed out using the disaster recovery procedure documented in [5].

Appendix A. Post Upgrade Procedures

Execute the procedures in this section only **AFTER** the upgrade of **ALL** servers in the topology is completed.


Appendix A.1. Accept Upgrade

Detailed steps for accepting the upgrade are provided in the procedure. TPD requires that upgrades be accepted or rejected before any subsequent upgrades may be performed. **Alarm 32532 Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject** displays for each server until one of these two actions is performed.

An upgrade should be accepted only after it is determined to be successful as the Accept is final. This frees up file storage but prevents a backout from the previous upgrade.

Note: Once the upgrade is accepted for a server, that server is not allowed to backout to a previous release.

Note: This procedure must be performed in a Maintenance Window.

	<h1>!!WARNING!!</h1>	<p>Upgrade acceptance may only be executed with authorization from the customer.</p> <p>Be advised that once an upgrade has been accepted, it is not possible to back out to the previous release.</p>
---	----------------------	--

Procedure 40. Accept Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure accepts a successful upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>It is recommended that this procedure be performed two weeks after the upgrade</p>	<p>Verify the upgraded system has been stable for two weeks or more.</p> <p>Note: It is not possible to back out after this is procedure is executed.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Execute this step if accepting a NOAM server.</p> <p>Log all current alarms present at the NOAM.</p>	<p>Log all alarms before accepting the NOAM upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI. 2. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 3. Click Report to generate an Alarms report. 4. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. <p>All other upgraded servers have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description																												
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SOAM VIP: Execute this step if accepting a SOAM server.</p> <p>Log all current alarms present at the SOAM.</p>	<p>Log all alarms before accepting the SOAM upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI. 2. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 3. Click Report to generate an Alarms report. 4. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. <p>All other upgraded servers have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p>																												
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Accept upgrade for multiple servers</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. 3. Select the SOAM tab of the site being upgraded. <p>Note: The Site Accept button accepts the upgrade for every upgraded server at the selected site. This is the most efficient way to accept an upgrade. A manual alternative to this is to select the link of each server group in the site and use the Accept button to accept the upgrade of only the servers in the selected server group.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click Site Accept. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE1_SG IPFE2_SG IPFE3_SG IPFE4_SG MP_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Upgrade Method</th> <th>Server Upgrade States</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SO_East</td> <td>DSR (active/standby pair)</td> <td>OAM (Bulk)</td> <td>Accept or Reject (2/2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP_SG</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>Bulk (50% availability)</td> <td>Accept or Reject (2/2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE4_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Accept or Reject (1/1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE1_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Accept or Reject (1/1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE3_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Accept or Reject (1/1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE2_SG</td> <td>IP Front End</td> <td>Serial</td> <td>Accept or Reject (1/1)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Site Upgrade Site Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>A confirmation screen warns that once the server is accepted it is not able to revert back to the previous image state.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Click OK. <p>WARNING: Accepting the upgrade may take several minutes depending on the servers in the network. Be patient and DO NOT TRY to accept the site again since this results in different accept states on the Server Upgrade States column on the Upgrade Administration screen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. <p>As upgrade is accepted on each server, the corresponding Alarm ID – 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject) should automatically clear and server status transitions to Backup Needed.</p>	Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States	SO_East	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Accept or Reject (2/2)	MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Accept or Reject (2/2)	IPFE4_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)	IPFE1_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)	IPFE3_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)	IPFE2_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)
Server Group	Function	Upgrade Method	Server Upgrade States																											
SO_East	DSR (active/standby pair)	OAM (Bulk)	Accept or Reject (2/2)																											
MP_SG	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Bulk (50% availability)	Accept or Reject (2/2)																											
IPFE4_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)																											
IPFE1_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)																											
IPFE3_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)																											
IPFE2_SG	IP Front End	Serial	Accept or Reject (1/1)																											

Appendix A.2. Undeploy ISO

After the upgrade has been accepted, run this procedure to undeploy all deployed ISOs. When an ISO is undeployed, the ISO is deleted from all servers in the topology except for the active NOAM. On the active NOAM, the ISO remains in the File Management Area.

This procedure can be run at any time after the upgrade has been accepted.

Procedure 41. Undeploy ISO

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure removes an ISO from the DSR servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the files in the file management area</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files.
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Start ISO undeploy sequence</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select an ISO stored in the isos directory of the File Management Area. The ISO filename has the format: <code>isos/ DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso</code> 2. Click Undeploy ISO. 3. Click OK on the confirmation screen to start the undeploy sequence.
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Monitor the ISO undeploy progress</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the ISO being deployed in step 2. 2. Click View ISO Deployment Report. 3. If some servers show the ISO as Deployed, click Back on the Files View screen. 4. Periodically repeat sub-steps 1 through 3 until all servers indicate Not Deployed. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View]</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;">Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View] Fri Oct 14 13:52:44 2016 EDT</p> <p>Deployment report for DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso:</p> <p>Deployed on 16/16 servers.</p> <pre> GTXA-NO1: Deployed GTXA-NO2: Deployed GTXA-SO1: Deployed GTXA-SO-SP: Deployed GTXA-MP1: Deployed GTXA-MP2: Deployed GTXA-Session1: Deployed GTXA-Session2: Deployed GTXA-Binding-SP: Deployed </pre> <p style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="Print"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Back"/> </p> </div>

Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Repeat as necessary	If there are additional ISOs in the File Management Area that need to be undeployed, repeat steps 2. and 3. as necessary.

Appendix A.3. Post Upgrade Accept Procedures

The following procedure is executed after the upgrade has been accepted

Procedure 42. Post Upgrade Accept Procedure.

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs miscellaneous actions that are required to be executed after the upgrade is accepted.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Reset COMCOL compatibility flag	<p>This step is required only if the source release is pre-8.x.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the active NOAM: <pre>ssh <NOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 5.</p> Enter this command to reset the COMCOL backward compatibility flag. Backward compatibility is no longer required when all of the servers in the topology have been upgraded to release 8.0 or later. <pre>\$ iset -fvalue=0 LongParam where "name='cm.cm6compat'"</pre> <p>Sample output:</p> <pre>=== changed 1 records ===</pre> Verify the changed value: <pre>\$ iqt -zp -fvalue LongParam where "name='cm.cm6compat'" value 0</pre>



Appendix B. Increase Maximum Number of Open Files


The following procedure increases the maximum number of files that can be opened for reading and writing. As the number of servers in the topology grows, so does the need for additional files to handle merging data to the NOAM. This procedure checks the number of files currently in use, and, if necessary, increases the maximum number of open files.

Note: Following procedure is for one NOAM server. Repeat this procedure for other NOAM servers.

Procedure 43. Increase Maximum Number of Open Files

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure checks the number of files currently in use, and, if necessary, increases the maximum number of open files.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Determine the number of files currently open	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the active NOAM. <pre>ssh <NOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 5.</p> Enter the following command to retrieve the pid of idbsvc. The pid is highlighted in this sample output: <pre>\$ ps -ef grep -i idbsvc root 4369 idbsvc Up 03/01 13:03:28 1 idbsvc -M10 -ME204 -D40 -DE820 -W1 -S2</pre> The number of open files is output with the 'lsof' command. Use the highlighted value from sub-step 2 in place of XXXX in the lsof command. <pre>\$ sudo lsof -p XXXX wc -l 1278</pre> Record the number of files currently open (the output of sub-step 3): <hr/> Enter the following command to retrieve the pid of tpdProvd. The pid is highlighted in this sample output: <pre>\$ ps -ef grep -i tpdProvd tpdProvd 347635 1 0 06:09 ? 00:00:11 /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/tpdProvd</pre> The number of open files is output with the 'lsof' command. Use the highlighted value from sub-step 4 in place of XXXX in the lsof command. <pre>\$ sudo lsof -p XXXX wc -l 1280</pre> Record the number of files currently open (the output of sub-step 5): <hr/>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM CLI: Maximum number of open files</p>	<p>Display the maximum number of open files for idbsvc.</p> <p>8. Use the highlighted value from step 1, sub-step 2 in place of XXXX in the cat command.</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /proc/XXXX/limits grep -i open Max open files 32768 32768 files</pre> <p>The output of the cat command displays the maximum number of files that can be open by the idbsvc process. Record both values here: Soft Limit (1st value): _____ Hard Limit (2nd value): _____</p> <p>This system has over 1024 open files, but its current ulimit for idbsvc is high enough during normal operation that the amount of open files does not pose a problem. However, when an attempt to upgrade another process (tpdProvd) updates idbsvc max # of open files to 1024, it causes the upgrade to fail.</p> <p>Display the maximum number of open files for tpdProvd.</p> <p>9. Use the highlighted value from step 1, sub-step 4 for tpdProvd in place of XXXX in the cat command.</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /proc/XXXX/limits grep -i open Max open files 1024 4096 files</pre> <p>The output of the cat command displays the maximum number of files that can be open by the tpdProvd process. Record both values here: Soft Limit (1st value): _____ Hard Limit (2nd value): _____</p>
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Make sure the current number of open files used by idbsvc in in the safe limit</p> 	<p>If the number of currently open files (step 1, sub-step 3) of idbsvc is less than the maximum allowed (step 2, sub-step 2 Soft Limit for tpdProvd), this procedure is complete, that is, number of currently open files (used by idbsvc) is less than 1024.</p> <p>Further steps are not required to be executed on this NOAM server.</p> <p>If the number of currently open files are more than the (step 2, sub-step 2 Soft Limit for tpdProvd), that is, 1024, go to step 5.</p> <p>Repeat this procedure (if required) for other NOAM server.</p>
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Make sure the current number of open files used by tpdProvd in in the safe limit</p> 	<p>If the maximum number of open files value (step 2, sub-step 2 - Soft Limit) for tpdProvd is already set to 32768, this procedure is complete.</p> <p>Further steps are not required to be executed on this NOAM server.</p> <p>If maximum value is not already set, then go to step 5.</p> <p>Repeat this procedure (if required) for other NOAM server.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Increase max number of open files 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Using a text editor with sudo, edit the file <code>/etc/init/tpdProvd.conf</code> to add these two lines just before the comment line in the file <code>/etc/init/tpdProvd.conf</code> that reads Start the daemon: <pre># increase open file limit limit nofile 32768 32768</pre> Insight of file as example: <pre># # restart tpdProvd up to 10 times within a 100 second period. # If tpdProvd fails to start 10 times within a 100 second period then # it most likely has a deeper problem that restarting will not overcome. respawn limit 10 100 # increase open file limit limit nofile 32768 32768 # # Start the daemon script</pre> Save the file and close the editor. <p>Caution: Do not edit any other line in this file. You can back up the file, if required.</p>
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Restart tpdProvd service	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Enter this command to stop tpdProvd: <pre>\$ sudo initctl stop tpdProvd</pre> Enter this command to restart tpdProvd: <pre>\$ sudo initctl start tpdProvd</pre> Sample output: <pre>tpdProvd start/running, proceed 186743</pre>
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM CLI: Recheck open file maximum limit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the following command to retrieve the pid of idbsvc. The pid is highlighted in this sample output: <pre>\$ ps -ef grep -i idbsvc root 8670 idbsvc Up 03/01 13:03:28 1 idbsvc -M10 -ME204 -D40 -DE820 -W1 -S2</pre> Use the highlighted value from sub-step 1 in place of XXXX in the cat command. <pre>\$ sudo cat /proc/XXXX/limits grep -i open Max open files 32768 32768 files</pre> Verify the output of sub-step 2 indicates that the max number of open files is 32768. If the value is NOT 32768, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS).

Appendix C. Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x

The following procedure upgrades a single DSR server of any type (NOAM, SOAM, MP, etc.) when the active NOAM is on DSR 8.x.

Note: This procedure may be executed multiple times during the overall upgrade, depending on the number of servers in the DSR and the chosen upgrade methodology. Make multiple copies of Appendix C to mark up, or keep another form of written record of the steps performed.

Procedure 44. Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration – DSR 8.x

Step #	Procedure	Description																														
<p>This procedure executes the Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration steps for an active NOAM on release 8.x.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the pre-upgrade status of servers</p>	<p>1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP.</p> <p>2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>3. Select the Network Element of the server to be upgraded (NOAM or site).</p> <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>The active NOAM server may have some or all of these expected alarms: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version	NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0	NO2	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM				Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0		Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																											
NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																											
NO2	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																													
	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0																											
	Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																													
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify status of server to be upgraded</p>	<p>1. Identify the server to be upgraded (NOAM, SOAM, MP, etc.) _____ (record hostname)</p> <p>2. Verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version.</p> <p>3. If the server is in the Backup Needed state, select the server and click Backup.</p> <p>4. On the Upgrade Backup screen, click OK.</p> <p>The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress.</p> <p>5. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded.</p>																														

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>6. When the backup is complete, verify the server state changes to Ready.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Backup Needed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0		Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM			NO2	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0		Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
NO1	Backup Needed	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			
NO2	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0																																	
	Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate the server upgrade</p>	<p>1. From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded.</p> <p>2. Click Upgrade Server.</p> <p>The Initiate Upgrade form displays.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0		Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM			NO2	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0		Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
NO1	Ready	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			
NO2	Accept or Reject	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0																																	
	Err	N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Select upgrade ISO</p>	<p>Initiate the server upgrade.</p> <p>1. From the Upgrade Settings – Upgrade ISO options, select the ISO to use in the server upgrade.</p> <p>Note: When the active NOAM is the server being upgraded, click OK to initiate an HA switchover and cause the GUI session to log out.</p> <p>Note: If the selected server is the active server in an active/standby pair, the OAM Max HA Role column displays Active with a red background. This is NOT an alarm condition. This indicator is to make the user aware the Make Ready action causes an HA switchover.</p> <p>2. Click OK.</p> <p>The upgrade begins and control returns to the Upgrade Administration screen.</p>																																				

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate] Mon Dec 26 2017</p> <p>Info* ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Upgrade Settings</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso ▾ <small>Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</small></p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div> <p>*** Critical *** Do NOT omit this step</p> <p>3. Log out of the GUI, clear the browser cache, and log back into the active NOAM via the VIP before continuing. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p>	Hostname	Action	Status	NO1	Upgrade	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version	Standby	NO_DSR_VM	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																								
Hostname	Action	Status																																				
NO1	Upgrade	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version	Standby	NO_DSR_VM	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																														
OAM HA Role	Network Element	Application Version																																				
Standby	NO_DSR_VM	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																																				
<p>5. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress</p>	<p>See step 6. for an optional method of monitoring upgrade progress. See step 7. for instructions if the upgrade fails.</p> <p>Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade displays as FAILED.</p> <p>The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</p> <p>1. Observe the upgrade status of the site on the Upgrade Administration screen by selecting the Entire Site link. An upgrade status summary of each server group in the site displays in the Server Upgrade States column.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade Mon Dec 26 22:20</p> <p>Filter* ▾ Status ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>NO_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Upgrading Warn</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Accept or Reject</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Err</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	NO1	Upgrading Warn	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0		Accept or Reject	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso	NO2	Err	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0			N/A	NO_DSR_VM		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
NO1	Upgrading Warn	Standby	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	7.0.1.0.0-70.28.0																																	
	Accept or Reject	N/A	NO_DSR_VM		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.18.0-x86_64.iso																																	
NO2	Err	Active	Network OAM&P	OAM&P	8.0.0.0.0-80.18.0																																	
		N/A	NO_DSR_VM																																			

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<p>Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31104 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31282 (The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31226 (HA Availability Status Degraded)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 31149 (DB Late Write Nonactive)</p> <p>2. Wait for the upgrade to complete. The Status Message column displays Success. This step takes approximately 20 to 50 minutes.</p> <p>Note: In the unlikely event that after the upgrade, if the Upgrade State of server is Backout Ready or Failed and the Status Message displays Server could not restart the application to complete the upgrade, then perform Appendix M Manual Completion of Server Upgrade to restore the server to full operational status and return to this step to continue the upgrade.</p> <p>Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent.</p> <p>If the upgrade fails, do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with Appendix U on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: (Optional) View in-progress status from command line of server	<p>An optional method to view Upgrade progress from the command line: To view the detailed progress of the upgrade , access the server command line (via SSH or Console), and enter:</p> <pre>\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>This command displays the upgrade log entries as the events occur. Once the upgrade is complete, the server reboots. It takes a couple of minutes for the DSR application processes to start up.</p> <p>For example, this command displays the current rev on the server:</p> <pre>[admusr@NO2 ~]\$ appRev Install Time: Thu Dec 15 00:05:46 2016 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.7.0.0.0-88.68.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.7.0.0.0_88.68.0- OracleLinux6.10-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.10</pre> <p>If the upgrade fails, do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If the upgrade fails	<p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (via ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> <p>It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) by referring to Appendix U of this document and provide these files. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>

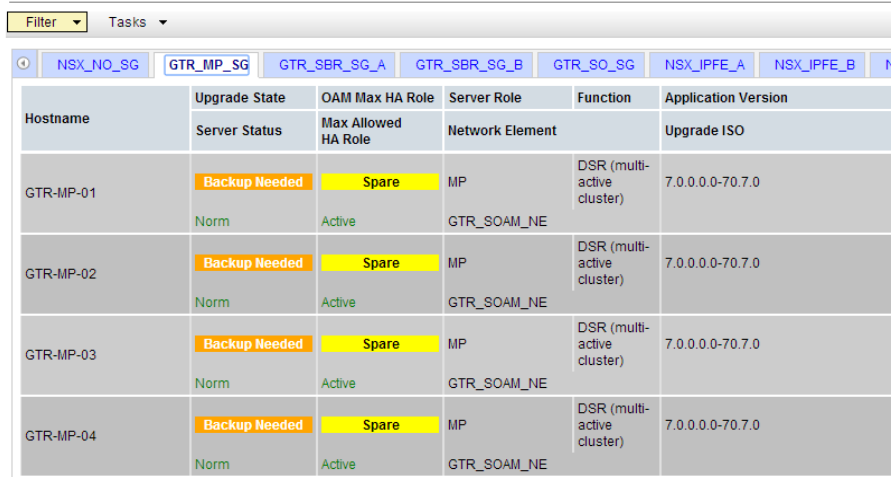
Step #	Procedure	Description																								
<p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify post upgrade status</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the tab of the NOAM or site being upgraded. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been updated to the target software release version. Verify the Upgrade State of the upgraded server is Accept or Reject. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks*</p> <p>NO_SG SO_East SO_North SO_West</p> <p>Entire Site SO_East IPFE_SG MP_SG SS7MP_SG1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject Err</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>System OAM SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject Err</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>System OAM SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	SO1	Accept or Reject Err	Active N/A	System OAM SO1_DSR_VM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso	SO2	Accept or Reject Err	Standby N/A	System OAM SO1_DSR_VM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																					
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																					
SO1	Accept or Reject Err	Active N/A	System OAM SO1_DSR_VM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso																					
SO2	Accept or Reject Err	Standby N/A	System OAM SO1_DSR_VM	OAM	8.0.0.0.0-80.17.0 DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.17.0-x86_64.iso																					
<p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM/SOAM VIP: Verify the server was successfully upgraded</p>	<p>View the post-upgrade status of the server: Navigate to Alarm & Events > View Active. The active NOAM or SOAM server may have some or all the following expected alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10010 (Stateful database not yet synchronized with mate database) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31000 (Program impaired by S/W Fault) Alarm ID = 31201 (Process Not Running) for eclipseHelp process Alarm ID = 31282 (The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault) <p>The active NOAM or SOAM has these expected alarms until both NOAMs/SOAMs are upgraded:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 31233 – HA Secondary Path Down Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject) <p>Note: Do not accept upgrade at this time. This alarm is OK.</p>																								

Appendix D. Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration

The following procedure upgrades multiple servers in parallel.

Note: This procedure is executed multiple times during the overall upgrade, depending on the number of servers in your DSR. Make multiple copies of Appendix D to mark up or keep another form of written record of the steps performed.

Procedure 45. Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration

Step #	Procedure	Description																														
<p>This procedure executes the Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration steps. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: View pre-upgrade status of the servers	<p>1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP.</p> <p>2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>The active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> <p>Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>GTR-MP-01</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Spare Active</td> <td>MP GTR_SOAM_NE</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.0.0.0-70.7.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-MP-02</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Spare Active</td> <td>MP GTR_SOAM_NE</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.0.0.0-70.7.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-MP-03</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Spare Active</td> <td>MP GTR_SOAM_NE</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.0.0.0-70.7.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-MP-04</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Spare Active</td> <td>MP GTR_SOAM_NE</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.0.0.0-70.7.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM Max HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version	GTR-MP-01	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0	GTR-MP-02	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0	GTR-MP-03	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0	GTR-MP-04	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM Max HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																											
GTR-MP-01	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0																											
GTR-MP-02	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0																											
GTR-MP-03	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0																											
GTR-MP-04	Backup Needed Norm	Spare Active	MP GTR_SOAM_NE	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.0.0.0-70.7.0																											

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify status of servers to be upgraded	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Identify the MP servers to be upgraded in parallel _____ (record names) Verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version for each MP server to be upgraded. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade and select the Server Group of the server to upgrade. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BarrA-SO-SP</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BarrA-SO1</td> <td>Backup Needed</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the server is in Backup Needed state, select the servers and click Backup. The Upgrade State changes to Backup in Progress. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to Ready. Verify the OAM Max HA Role is in the expected condition (either standby or active). This depends on the server being upgraded. 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	BarrA-SO-SP	Backup Needed	Standby	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0		Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO			BarrA-SO1	Backup Needed	Active	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0		Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
BarrA-SO-SP	Backup Needed	Standby	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																			
BarrA-SO1	Backup Needed	Active	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																			

Step #	Procedure	Description																																				
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify upgrade status is Ready</p>	<p>The Upgrade Administration form refreshes and the server to upgrade displays Upgrade Status = Ready. This may take a minute.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks*</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BarrA-SO-SP</td> <td>Ready</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>BarrA-SO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.3.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur. Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31114 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) 	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	BarrA-SO-SP	Ready	Standby	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0-73.14.0		Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO			BarrA-SO1	Ready	Active	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0-73.14.0		Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																																	
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																																	
BarrA-SO-SP	Ready	Standby	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																			
BarrA-SO1	Ready	Active	System OAM	OAM	7.3.0.0-73.14.0																																	
	Norm	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																			
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Determine upgrade method – manual or automatic</p>	<p>To upgrade multiple servers in parallel using the manual option, execute steps 5. and 6.</p> <p>To upgrade a server group using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option, proceed to step 7.</p>																																				

Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate upgrade (part 1)</p>	<p>1. From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the servers to upgrade.</p> <p>2. Click Upgrade Server.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Tasks</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>The Initiate Upgrade form displays on the Administration > Software Management > Upgrade Initiate screen.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	BarrA-MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO			BarrA-MP2	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
BarrA-MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																															
	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																	
BarrA-MP2	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																															
	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																																	
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate upgrade (part 2) – Select ISO form</p>	<p>1. From the Upgrade Settings – Upgrade ISO options, select the ISO to use in the server upgrade.</p> <p>2. Click OK.</p> <p>The upgrade begins and control returns to the Upgrade Administration screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p> <p>Info*</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP1</td> <td rowspan="2">Upgrade</td> <td>OAM HA Role Standby</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Appl HA Role Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP2</td> <td rowspan="2">Upgrade</td> <td>OAM HA Role Active</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Appl HA Role Active</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Upgrade Settings</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div> <p>3. Proceed to step 8. to complete this procedure.</p>	Hostname	Action	Status	BarrA-MP1	Upgrade	OAM HA Role Standby	Appl HA Role Active	BarrA-MP2	Upgrade	OAM HA Role Active	Appl HA Role Active																							
Hostname	Action	Status																																		
BarrA-MP1	Upgrade	OAM HA Role Standby																																		
		Appl HA Role Active																																		
BarrA-MP2	Upgrade	OAM HA Role Active																																		
		Appl HA Role Active																																		

Step #	Procedure	Description																																
<p>7.</p> <p>☐</p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate (part 1) – Automated Server Group Upgrade option</p>	<p>1. To utilize the Automated Server Group upgrade option, verify no servers in the server group are selected.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td rowspan="2">7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td rowspan="2">7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Norm</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>2. Click Auto Upgrade.</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	BarrA-MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		BarrA-MP2	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO	
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																													
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																													
BarrA-MP1	Ready	Standby	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																													
	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																															
BarrA-MP2	Ready	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																													
	Norm	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																															

Step #	Procedure	Description																					
<p>8. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Initiate (part 2) – Automated Server Group Upgrade</p>	<p>Note: The settings to be used in this step are specified in the calling procedure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The Upgrade Settings section of the Initiate screen controls the behavior of the automated upgrade. Select the settings that apply to the server type being upgraded. <p>Bulk: Select this option for active/standby and multi-active server groups. For servers in an active/standby configuration, the standby server is upgraded first, followed by the active. Servers in a multi-active configuration are upgraded in parallel to the extent allowed by the Availability setting.</p> <p>Serial: Select this option to upgrade multiple servers one at a time.</p> <p>Grouped Bulk: Select this option for SBR server groups. Grouped bulk always upgrades the spare(s), followed by the standby, followed by the active.</p> <p>Availability: This setting determines how many servers remain in service while servers in the server group are upgraded. For example, a setting of 50% ensures at least half of the servers in the server group remain in service.</p> <p>Note: The Serial upgrade mode is available as an alternative to Bulk and Grouped Bulk for a more conservative upgrade scenario. Serial mode upgrades each server in the server group one at a time, and can be used on any server group type.</p> Select the appropriate ISO from the Upgrade ISO options. Click OK to start the upgrade. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p> <p>Info*</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BarrA-MP1</td> <td>Auto upgrade</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>BarrA-MP2</td> <td>Auto upgrade</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Upgrade Settings</p> <p>Server group upgrade mode.</p> <p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Bulk <input type="radio"/> Serial <input type="radio"/> Grouped Bulk </p> <p> Availability: 50% </p> <p> Upgrade ISO: DSR-8.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso </p> <p> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </p> </div>	Hostname	Action	Status	BarrA-MP1	Auto upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Standby	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO	BarrA-MP2	Auto upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Active	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO
Hostname	Action	Status																					
BarrA-MP1	Auto upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Standby	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO															
OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element																					
Standby	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																					
BarrA-MP2	Auto upgrade	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element	Active	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO															
OAM HA Role	Appl HA Role	Network Element																					
Active	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO																					

Step #	Procedure	Description																																		
<p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: View the upgrade administration form to monitor upgrade progress</p>	<p>See step 10. for an optional method of monitoring upgrade progress. See step 11. for instructions if the Upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.</p> <p>Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade displays as FAILED.</p> <p>The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</p> <p>1. Observe the upgrade status of the servers of interest. Upgrade status displays under the Status Message column.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter* Status Tasks*</p> <p>BarrA_BINDING_SG BarrA_MP_SG BarrA_SO_SG GTXA_MP_SG GTXA_NO_SG GTXA_SESSION_SG GTXA_SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP1</td> <td>Pending</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td>7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Err</td> <td>Active</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">BarrA-MP2</td> <td>Upgrading</td> <td>OOS</td> <td>MP</td> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unk</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>BarracudaA_1111201_SO</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>During the upgrade, the servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.</p> <p>Note: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down) Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) <p>2. Wait for the upgrade to complete. The Status Message column displays Success. This step takes approximately 20 to 50 minutes.</p> <p>When an upgraded SOAM becomes active on release 8.x, Alarm 25607 displays to alert the operator to enable the new Signaling Firewall feature. This alarm is active until the firewall is enabled in Procedure 27.</p> <p>Alarm ID = 25607 (DSR Signaling Firewall is administratively Disabled)</p>	Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version		Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO	BarrA-MP1	Pending	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0	Err	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso	BarrA-MP2	Upgrading	OOS	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)		Unk	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso
Hostname	Upgrade State	OAM HA Role	Server Role	Function	Application Version																															
	Server Status	Appl HA Role	Network Element		Upgrade ISO																															
BarrA-MP1	Pending	Active	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)	7.3.0.0.0-73.14.0																															
	Err	Active	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																															
BarrA-MP2	Upgrading	OOS	MP	DSR (multi-active cluster)																																
	Unk	N/A	BarracudaA_1111201_SO		DSR-8.0.0.0.0_80.13.0-x86_64.iso																															

Step #	Procedure	Description
		If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: (Optional) View in-progress status from command line	<p>Optional method to view upgrade progress from a command line: To view the detailed progress of the upgrade – Access the server command line (via ssh or Console), and: <pre>\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> </p> <p>Once a server is upgraded, it reboots, and it takes a couple of minutes for the DSR application processes to start up. This command displays the current rev on the upgraded servers: <pre>[admusr@NO1 ~]\$ appRev Install Time: Wed Apr 4 05:03:13 2018 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.7.0.0.0-88.68.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.7.0.0.0_88.68.0-OracleLinux6.10-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.10</pre> </p> <p>If the upgrade fails, do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: If upgrade fails	<p>If a server upgrade fails, access the server command line (via ssh or Console), and collect the following files: <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> </p> <p>If the upgrade fails, do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p>
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify post upgrade status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Verify the Application Version value for the servers has been updated to the target software release version. 3. Verify the Status Message indicates success. 4. Verify the Upgrade State of the upgraded servers is Accept or Reject.

Step #	Procedure	Description
13. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify the servers were successfully upgraded	<p>View Post-Upgrade Status of the server: The active SOAM server may have some or all the following expected alarm(s):</p> <p>Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10010 (Stateful database not yet synchronized with mate database) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31000 (Program impaired by S/W Fault) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> <p>Note: Do not accept upgrade at this time. This alarm is OK.</p>

Appendix E. IDIH Upgrade at a Site

In IDIH release 7.1 and later, the mediation and application instance data is stored in the Oracle Database. This allows the Application and Mediation servers to be upgraded by performing a fresh installation. Upon completion of the upgrade, the mediation and application guests automatically restore the configuration data from the Oracle database.

Table 24 shows the elapsed time estimates for IDIH upgrade.

Table 24. IDIH Upgrade Execution Overview

Procedure	Elapsed Time (hr:min)		Procedure Title	Impact
	This Step	Cum.		
Procedure 46	1:15-1:45	1:15-1:45	Procedure 46	None
Procedure 47	0:30-0:45	1:45-2:30	Procedure 47	None

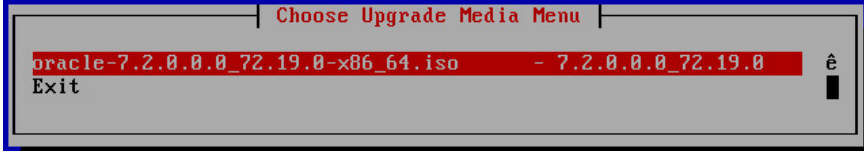
Appendix E.1. Upgrade Oracle Guest

The Oracle Guest is upgraded first.

Procedure 46. Upgrade Oracle Guest

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs the IDIH Oracle Guest upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH CLI: Perform a system health check on the Oracle guest</p>	<p>1. Log into the Oracle guest as the admusr user.</p> <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>2. Execute the analyze_server.sh script.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/xIH/plat/bin/analyze_server.sh -i</pre> <p>Sample output:</p> <pre>[admusr@cat-ora ~]\$ /usr/TKLC/xIH/plat/bin/analyze_server.sh -i 13:24:52: STARTING HEALTHCHECK PROCEDURE 13:24:52: date: 03-17-15, hostname: cat-ora 13:24:52: TPD VERSION: 7.0.0.0.0-86.14.0 13:24:52: ----- 13:24:52: Checking disk free space 13:24:52: No disk space issues found : 13:25:02: All tests passed! 13:25:02: ENDING HEALTHCHECK PROCEDURE WITH CODE 0</pre> <p>If the output indicates the following error, ignore the error and continue the upgrade. This error indicates the target release and the running release are the same.</p> <pre>00:47:29: Checking runlevel 00:47:29: >>> Error: Runlevel value "3 4" is different from "N 4"</pre> <p>If the output indicates any other failure, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH CLI: Shut down the Mediation guest to prepare for the Oracle guest upgrade</p>	<p>1. Log into the Mediation guest as admusr user.</p> <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>2. Shut down the Mediation guest.</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 0</pre> <p>The active SOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down Alarm ID = 11511 Unable to connect via Comagent to remote DIH server with hostname</p> <p>The active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down</p>
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH CLI: Shut down the Application guest to prepare for the Oracle guest upgrade</p>	<p>1. Log into the Application guest as admusr user.</p> <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>2. Shut down the Application guest.</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 0</pre> <p>The active SOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down Alarm ID = 11511 Unable to connect via Comagent to remote DIH server with hostname</p> <p>The active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms:</p> <p>Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH Application Guest CLI: Increase Size of /var/TKLC	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> It is seen that space available in /var/TKLC directory is less than the ISO size. So, there is need to increase the space of this directory. Log into the Application guest as admusr user. <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> Check the space <pre>df -kh /var/TKLC</pre> Note down the current space. Available space should be more than 6 GB space for this. In case sufficient space is already there, skip next sub-steps. Increase the space <pre>sudo lvresize -L +6G /dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc</pre> Resize the space <pre>sudo resize2fs /dev/mapper/vgroot-plat_var_tklc</pre> Check the space again <pre>df -kh /var/TKLC</pre> Available space should be more than 6 GB space for this.
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Move Oracle ISO	<p>Use a file transfer tool to copy the Oracle ISO to the Oracle guest as admusr. Example:</p> <pre>\$ scp oracle-DSR-8.5.0.0.0_90.11.0-x86_64.iso admusr@<ora-guest-ip>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre>
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH CLI: Start Oracle guest upgrade	<p>The Oracle guest is upgraded using the Platform Configuration utility.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Launch the platform configuration utility. <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> In the resulting menu, navigate to Maintenance > Upgrade > Initiate Upgrade. At the ISO selection menu, select the target release Oracle ISO and press Enter. 
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH CLI: Monitor upgrade progress	<p>The platform configuration menu exits and the guest reboots when the upgrade completes.</p> <p>To view the detailed progress of the upgrade, access the server command line (via SSH or Console), and enter:</p> <pre>\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Once the server has upgraded, it reboots. It takes a couple of minutes for the Oracle processes to start up.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH CLI: Perform a system health check on the Oracle guest	Wait a few minutes to allow the Oracle guest to stabilize after the reboot, and repeat step 1 to perform the post-upgrade system health check. Note: The following warnings are expected due to the mediation and app servers being shut down. Warning: mediation server is not reachable (or ping response exceeds 3 seconds) Warning: app server is not reachable (or ping response exceeds 3 seconds)

Appendix E.2. Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

The Mediation and Application Guest upgrade is similar to the installation procedure.

Procedure 47. Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure performs the IDIH Mediation and Application server upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	CLOUD GUI: Remove existing Application Server	Use the hypervisor-specific procedure to remove the current iDIH Application and iDIH Mediation guests.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	CLOUD GUI: Deploy the latest application and mediation guest images	Use the hypervisor-specific procedure to deploy the latest Application and Mediation guests. Configure the iDIH mediation and application guests to reflect the guest profile in the installation document [1].
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH CLI: Configure the IDIH VM Networks	Configure the iDIH mediation and application guests according to Procedure 32 (Configure iDIH Virtual Machines) of installation document [1].
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH CLI: Run Post Installation scripts on iDIH VMs	Execute Post Installation iDIH mediation and application specific scripts on the respective iDIH guests according to Procedure 33 (Run Post Installation scripts on iDIH VMs) of installation document [1].
5.	NOAM CLI: Reset SOAP password	In case upgrading to release IDIH 8.2.3, reset the SOAP password to allow self-authentication of DSR with IDIH to send traces. Refer to the Appendix Reset the SOAP Password.

Appendix F. Alternate Server Upgrade Procedures

The following procedure provides alternative ways of upgrading various server types, using an array of differing methods. All of the procedures in this section are secondary to the upgrade methods provided in

Section 4 and Section 5. These procedures should be used only when directed by or by other procedures within this document.

Appendix F.1. Alternate Pre-Upgrade Backup

The following procedure is an alternative to the normal pre-upgrade backup provided in Procedure 14. It is recommended that this procedure be executed only under the direction of .

Procedure 48. Alternate Pre-Upgrade Backup

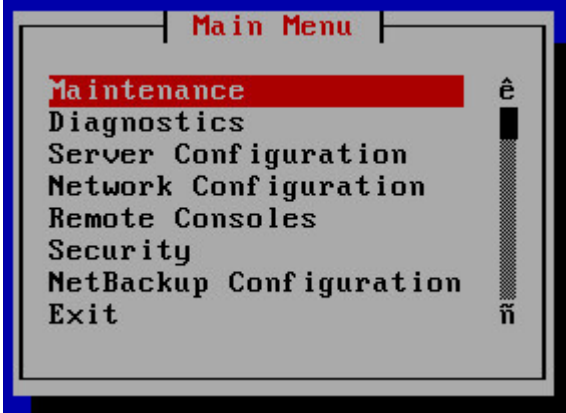
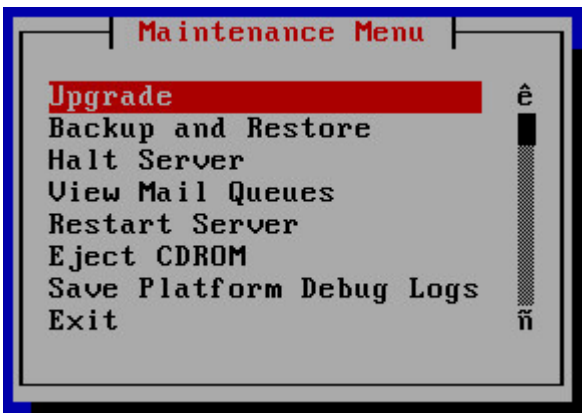
Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure is a manual alternative backup. The procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: Log into the active SOAM	Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the active SOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP></pre>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: Start a screen session	Enter the command: <pre>\$ screen</pre> The screen tool creates a no-hang-up shell session, so the command continues to execute if the user session is lost.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: Execute a backup of all servers managed from the SOAM to be upgraded	Execute the backupAllHosts utility on the active SOAM. This utility remotely accesses each specified server, and runs the backup command for that server. The --site parameter allows the user to backup all servers associated with a given SOAM site to be upgraded: WARNING: Failure to include the --site parameter with the backupAllHosts command results in overwriting the NOAM backup file created in Section 3.4.4. Backing out to the previous release is not possible if the file is overwritten. <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/dpi/bin/backupAllHosts --site=<NEName></pre> where <NEName> is the Network Element Name (NEName) as seen using the following command: <pre>\$ iqt NetworkElement</pre> This output displays when executing either of the options: <pre>Do you want to remove the old backup files (if exists) from all the servers (y/[n])?y</pre> It may take from 10 to 30 minutes for this command to complete, depending upon the number of servers and the data in the database. Do not proceed until the backup on each server is completed. Output similar to the following indicates successful completion: Script Completed. Status: HOSTNAME STATUS -----

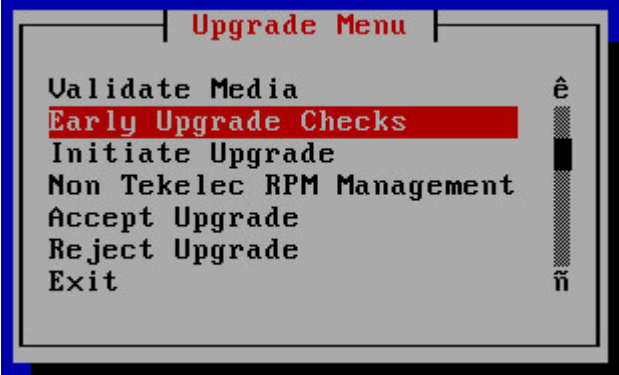
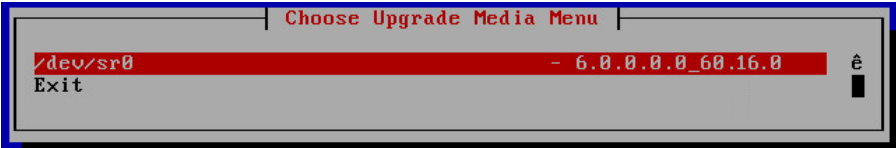
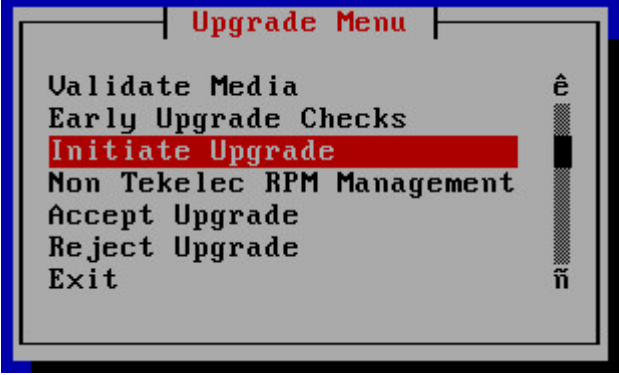
Step #	Procedure	Description
		<pre>HPC3blade02 PASS HPC3blade01 PASS HPC3blade03 PASS HPC3blade04 PASS</pre> <p>Errors also report to the command line.</p> <p>Note: There is no progress indication for this command; only the final report when it completes.</p>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: Exit the screen session	<pre># exit [screen is terminating]</pre> <p>Note: screen -ls is used to show active screen sessions on a server, and screen -dr is used to re-enter a disconnected screen session.</p>
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	ALTERNATIVE METHOD (Optional) Server CLI: If needed, the Alternative backup method can be executed on each individual server instead of using the backupAllHosts script	<p>Alternative: A manual back up can be executed on each server individually, rather than using the script. To do this, log into each server in the site individually, and execute the following command to manually generate a full backup on that server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/full_backup</pre> <p>Output similar to the following indicates successful completion:</p> <pre>Success: Full backup of COMCOL run env has completed. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullDBParts. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullRunEnv. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</pre>
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify backup files are present on each server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files. 3. Click on each server tab, in turn. 4. For each server, verify the following (2) files have been created: <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2</pre> 5. Repeat sub-steps 1 through 4 for each site.

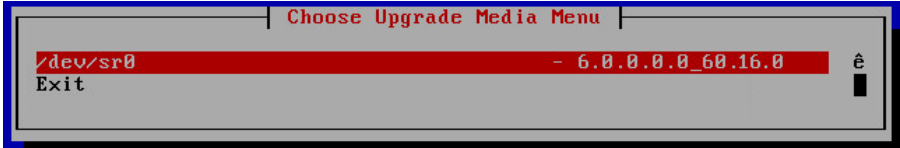
Appendix F.2. Server Upgrade Using platcfg

The following procedure enables a server to be upgraded using the Platform Configuration (platcfg) utility. This procedure should be used only under the guidance and direction of .

Procedure 49. Server Upgrade Using Platcfg

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a server using the platcfg utility.</p> <p>Note: All UI displays are sample representations of upgrade screens. The actual display may vary slightly for those shown.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Log into the server console to be upgraded</p>	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the server to be upgraded:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server IP> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Enter the platcfg menu</p>	<p>Switch to the platcfg user to start the configuration menu.</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>From the Main Menu, select Maintenance</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Main Menu". The menu items are: Maintenance (highlighted with a red bar), Diagnostics, Server Configuration, Network Configuration, Remote Consoles, Security, NetBackup Configuration, and Exit. Navigation arrows are shown on the right side of the menu.</p>
<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Select upgrade</p>	<p>From the Maintenance Menu, select Upgrade.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Maintenance Menu". The menu items are: Upgrade (highlighted with a red bar), Backup and Restore, Halt Server, View Mail Queues, Restart Server, Eject CDROM, Save Platform Debug Logs, and Exit. Navigation arrows are shown on the right side of the menu.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Select early upgrade checks</p>	<p>From the Upgrade Menu, select Early Upgrade Checks.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Upgrade Menu". The menu items are: Validate Media, Early Upgrade Checks (highlighted in red), Initiate Upgrade, Non Tekelec RPM Management, Accept Upgrade, Reject Upgrade, and Exit. Navigation arrows are visible on the right side.</p>
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Select the upgrade media</p>	<p>6. From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select the desired target media. This begins the early upgrade checks in the console window.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Choose Upgrade Media Menu". The menu items are: /dev/sr0 (highlighted in red) and Exit. A version number "6.0.0.0_60.16.0" is displayed on the right.</p> <p>Informational messages display as the checks progress. At the end of a successful test, a message similar to this displays:</p> <pre>Running earlyUpgradeChecks () for Upgrade::EarlyPolicy:: TPDEarlyChecks upgrade policy... Verified server is not pending accept of previous upgrade Hardware architectures match Install products match. Verified server is alarm free! Early Upgrade Checks Have Passed!</pre> <p>7. Verify early upgrade checks pass. In case of errors, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS).</p> <p>8. Press q to exit the screen session and return to the platcfg menu.</p> <p>9. From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select Exit.</p>
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Initiate the upgrade</p>	<p>From the Upgrade Menu, select Initiate Upgrade.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Upgrade Menu". The menu items are: Validate Media, Early Upgrade Checks, Initiate Upgrade (highlighted in red), Non Tekelec RPM Management, Accept Upgrade, Reject Upgrade, and Exit. Navigation arrows are visible on the right side.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Select the upgrade media	<p>The screen displays a message that it is searching for upgrade media. Once the upgrade media is found, an Upgrade Media selection menu displayed similar to the example shown.</p> <p>From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select the desired target media. This begins the server upgrade.</p>  <p>Many informational messages display on the terminal screen as the upgrade proceeds.</p> <p>After upgrade is complete, the server reboots.</p> <pre>A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre>
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Log into the server to be upgraded	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the server to be upgraded:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server IP> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Check for upgrade errors	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Examine the upgrade logs in the /var/TKLC/log/upgrade directory and verify no errors were reported. <pre>grep -i error /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> Examine the output of the command to determine if any errors were reported. If the upgrade fails, collect the following files: <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> It is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) by referring to Appendix U of this document and provide these files.
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify the upgrade	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Check the upgrade log for the upgrade complete message <pre>grep "UPGRADE IS COMPLETE" /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> Verify the UPGRADE IS COMPLETE message displays. If not, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS). <pre>[admusr@NO2 ~]\$ grep "UPGRADE IS COMPLETE" /var/TKLC/log/ upgrade/upgrade.log 1407786220:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE</pre>

Appendix F.3. Manual DA-MP (N+0) Upgrade Procedure

The following procedure is used to manually upgrade a multi-active DA-MP Server Group. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the normal DA-MP upgrade procedures in Section 5.

Procedure 50 must be executed for all configured DA-MPs of a site, regardless of how the DA-MPs are grouped for upgrade. So if 16 DA-MPs are upgraded four at a time, then Procedure 50 must be executed four distinct times.

Procedure 50. Manual DA-MP (N+0) Upgrade Procedure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a multi-active DA-MP servers using the manual upgrade method.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify all the DA-MPs to be upgraded together	From the data captured in Table 5, identify the DSR (multi-active cluster) server group to be upgraded.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade DA-MP servers as identified in step 1	<p>Upgrade up to (½) one half (no more than 50%) of the DA-MP servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure.</p> <p>Note: When using the manual server upgrade method, it is recommended that the DA-MP leader be upgraded in the last group of servers to minimize DA-MP leader role changes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute Appendix D Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration. 2. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for all servers identified in step 1 of this procedure	Repeat step 2 of this procedure for the remaining DA-MP servers.

Appendix F.4. ASG SBR Upgrade Procedure

The following procedure is used to upgrade the SBR server group using Auto Server Group upgrade. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the normal SBR upgrade procedures in Section 5.

Procedure 51. ASG SBR Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades the SBR Server Group using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade	From the data captured in Table 5, identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be executed at a time or multiple server groups can be executed simultaneously.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade SBR server group(s) identified in step 1 of this procedure using the upgrade multiple servers procedure	<p>Note: The spare SBRs of this server group are located at different sites.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. 2. Select the Serial upgrade mode. 3. Execute Appendix D Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for all SBR server groups with active, standby in Site 1 and spare in Site 2 (and an optional 2 nd spare in Site 3)	Repeat step 2 for all remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.

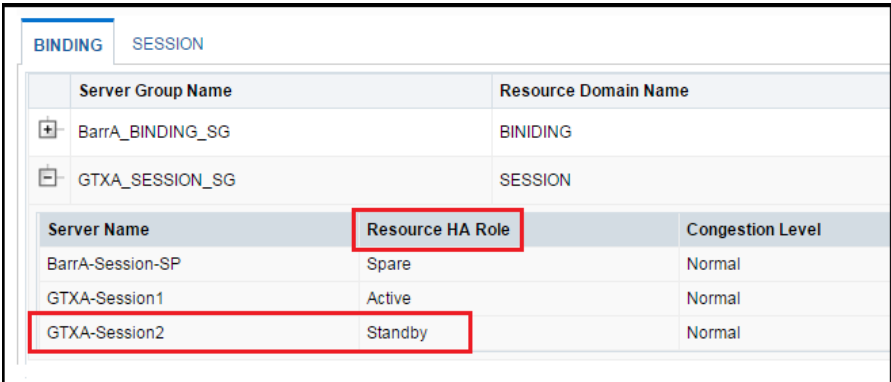
Appendix F.5. Manual SBR Upgrade Procedure




The following procedure is used to upgrade the SBR server group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the normal SBR upgrade procedures in Section 5.

Note: Before upgrading the active SBR, it is imperative that the database audit of the spare and standby servers complete successfully. Failure to comply could result in a loss of session/binding data.

Procedure 52. Manual SBR Upgrade Procedure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades an SBR server group using the manual upgrade option.</p> <p>Note: This procedure upgrades all the servers in the server group; however, if it is recommended to upgrade one by one, such as spare, standby, and active in different upgrade iterations. Upgrade those servers manually and then return to this procedure.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Identify the active, standby, and spare SBR server group(s) to upgrade</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the data captured in Table 5, identify the server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be executed at a time or multiple server groups can be executed simultaneously. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to SBR > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open each server group chosen in sub-step 1. Note which server is active, standby, and spare (as designated by the Resource HA Role) for each server group chosen for upgrade. The following figure provides an example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> GTXA-Session1 – Active GTXA-Session2 – Standby BarrA-Session-SP – Spare  <p>Note: SBR servers have two High Availability policies: one for controlling replication of session or binding data, and one for receipt of replicated configuration data from the NOAM and SOAM GUIs. During this upgrade procedure, ONLY the High Availability policy for replication of session or binding data is important. This means that the SBR Status screen MUST be used to determine the High Availability status (active, standby, or spare) of SBR servers. The HA Status screen and the OAM Max HA Role column on the Upgrade screen must NOT be used because they only show the status of the configuration replication policy.</p> <p>Because the two High Availability policies run independently, it is possible that a given server might be standby or spare for the session and binding replication policy, but active for the configuration replication policy. When this happens, it is necessary to ignore warnings on the Upgrade screen about selecting what it views as the active server (for the configuration replication policy).</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade spare SBR server identified in step 1 of this procedure (If need to be upgraded in this upgrade iteration) 	<p>Note: The spare SBRs of this server group are located at different sites.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Execute Appendix C Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point to monitor server status. Navigate to SBR > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. <p>Note: After executing Appendix C, the spare SBR temporarily disappears from the SBR Status screen. When the server comes back online, it reappears on the screen with a status of Out of Service.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor the Resource HA Role status of the spare server. Wait for the status to transition from Out of Service to Spare. If the system is equipped with a second spare SBR server, repeat sub-steps 1 thru 3 for the other spare. <p>Caution: Do not proceed to step 3 until the Resource HA Role of the spare SBR server returns to Spare.</p>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade standby SBR server identified in step 1 of this procedure (If need to be upgraded in this upgrade iteration)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Execute Appendix C Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and continue with the next step.
 <p>!!WARNING!! Failure to comply with step 4 and step 5 may result in the loss of PCA traffic, resulting in service impact.</p>		
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Verify standby SBR server status (If need to be upgraded in this upgrade iteration) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to SBR > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. <p>Note: After executing Appendix C, the standby SBR temporarily disappears from the SBR Status screen, and the spare server assumes the standby role. When the upgraded server comes back online, it reappears on the screen with a status of Out of Service.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor the Resource HA Role status of the upgraded server. Wait for the status to transition from Out of Service to Standby. <p>Caution: Do not proceed to step 5 until the Resource HA Role of the upgraded server transitions to Standby.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify bulk download from the active SBR to the standby and spare SBRs completes</p> <p>(If need to be upgraded in this upgrade iteration)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Alarm & Event > View History. Export the Event log using the following filter: <p>Server Group: Choose the SBR group that is in upgrade</p> <p>Display Filter: Event ID = 31127 – DB Replication Audit Complete</p> <p>Collection Interval: X hours ending in current time, where X is the time from upgrade completion of the standby and spare servers to the current time.</p> Wait for all instances of Event 31127: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 for the Standby binding SBR 1 for the Standby session SBR 1 for the Spare binding SBR 1 for the Spare session SBR 1 for the 3rd site Spare binding SBR (if equipped) 1 for the 3rd site Spare session SBR (if equipped) <p>Note: There is an expected loss of traffic depending on size of the bulk download. This must be noted along with events captured.</p>
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active SBR (CLI):</p> <p>Verify the replication status for DB Replication and pSbrBindingPolicy (Binding SBR)</p> <p>Or</p> <p>pSbrSessionPolicy (Session SBR)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active SBR of the first non-upgraded site: <pre>ssh admusr@<SBR_XMI_IP> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> Execute command <pre>irepstat -w</pre> <p>Verify replication is showing as Active for ActStb [DbReplication] policy, pSbrSessionPolicy (for Session SBR), and pSbrBindingPolicy (for Binding SBR).</p> <p>Do not proceed if replication is not Active for all of the resource.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>----- [admusr@StThomas-sSBR-A ~]\$ irepstat -w StThomas-sSBR-A C2706.068 StThomas-sSBR-A 11:19:19 [R] -- Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- BC From D0 StThomas-S02 Active 0 0.10 ^0.04%cpu 35.5/s CC To P0 StThomas-sSBR-B Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.08%cpu 48.3/s CC To P1 StThomas-sSBR-Sp Active 0 0.11 1%S 0.08%cpu 43.1/s -- Policy 20 pSbrSessionPolicy [pSbrSBaseRepl] ----- CC To P0 StThomas-sSBR-B Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.07%cpu 62.5/s CC To P1 StThomas-sSBR-Sp Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.08%cpu 56.2/s</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Upgrade active SBR server as identified in step 1 of this procedure (If need to be upgraded in this upgrade iteration)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute Appendix C Upgrade Single Server – DSR 8.x. 2. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix C, return to this point and continue with the next step.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for all SBR server groups with active, standby in Site 1 and spare in Site 2	Repeat steps 1 through 6 for all remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.

Appendix G. Expired Password Workaround Procedure

This appendix provides the procedures to handle password expiration during upgrade. Procedure 53 is a temporary workaround to allow an expired password to be used on a non-upgrade site. This procedure is provided as a workaround when a password expires after the NOAM has been upgraded and before all sites have been upgraded.

The workaround must be removed using Procedure 54 after the site is upgraded. Failure to remove the workaround inhibits password aging on the server.

Appendix G.1. Inhibit Password Aging

The following procedure enacts a workaround that inhibits password aging on the SOAM. This procedure should be used only when the following conditions apply:

- An upgrade is in progress
- The NOAMs have been upgraded, but one or more sites have not been upgraded
- A login password has expired on a non-upgraded site

Once the workaround is enacted, no passwords expire at that site. Remove the workaround once the site is upgraded.

Procedure 53. Expired Password Workaround Procedure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure disables password aging on a server, allowing “expired” credentials to be used for login. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM CLI: SSH to active SOAM server. Disable password aging	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active SOAM of the first non-upgraded site: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> Create a text file with the following content (exactly as formatted): <pre>[production] aw.policy.pwchange.isExpired = aw.policy.db.checkPw = [development : production] [test : development]</pre> Save the file as: <pre>/var/TKLC/appworks/ini/pw.ini</pre> Change the file permissions: <pre>sudo chmod 644 pw.ini</pre> Execute the following command: <pre>clearCache</pre> <p>Note: For each server on which this workaround is enacted, the old expired password must be used for login. The new password used on the NOAM does not work on these servers.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for standby SOAM	Repeat step 1 for the standby SOAM
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for all non-upgraded sites	Repeat steps 1 and 2 for all non-upgraded sites.

Appendix G.2. Enable Password Aging

The following procedure removes the password expiration workaround that is enabled by Procedure 53.

Procedure 54. Expired Password Workaround Removal Procedure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure removes the password aging workaround and re-enables password aging on a server. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active SOAM CLI: SSH to active SOAM server. Re-enable password aging.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active SOAM of the first non-upgraded site: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> Delete the pw.ini file: <pre>\$ sudo rm /var/TKLC/appworks/ini/pw.ini</pre> Execute this command: <pre>\$ sudo clearCache</pre> Repeat sub-steps 1 through 3 for the standby SOAM
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for all non-upgraded sites	Repeat this procedure for all non-upgraded sites.

Appendix G.3. Password Reset

The following procedure resets the GUI Admin (guiadmin) password on the NOAM. In a backout scenario where the password expired during the upgrade, it is possible for the customer to get locked out due to global provisioning being disabled. When this happens, this procedure can be used to reset the password to gain access to the GUI.

Procedure 55. Expired Password Reset Procedure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure resets the guiadmin password on the NOAM.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM CLI: SSH to active NOAM server. Reset the password</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the active NOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> <pre>password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> 2. Execute the reset command: <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/resetPassword guiadmin</pre> 3. At the Enter new Password for guiadmin prompt, enter a new password. 4. Attempt to log into the NOAM GUI using the new password. If the login is not successful, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance.

Appendix H. Network IDIH Compatibility Procedures

The following procedure is used to provide IDIH compatibility when upgrading to Release 8.x. Procedure 56 is performed on a Release 8.x IDIH to make the trace data viewable on prior release IDIH systems, as described in Section 1.7.2. This procedure must be performed on every IDIH 8.x system from which trace data is expected.

When all IDIH systems have been upgraded to Release 8.x, Procedure 57 must be executed on every IDIH on which Procedure 56 was previously performed.

Procedure 56. Enable IDIH 8.x Compatibility

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a server using the platcfg utility.</p> <p>Note: All UI displays are sample representations of upgrade screens. The actual display may vary slightly for those shown.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Log into the appserver	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the appserver:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server_ip> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Change user	<p>Change to the system user tekelec:</p> <pre>sudo su - tekelec</pre>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Execute command	<p>Execute the following command to enable backward compatibility</p> <pre>apps/ndih7-compat.sh enable</pre>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat as needed	Repeat this procedure on each IDIH 8.x appserver as needed.

Procedure 57. Disable IDIH 8.x Compatibility

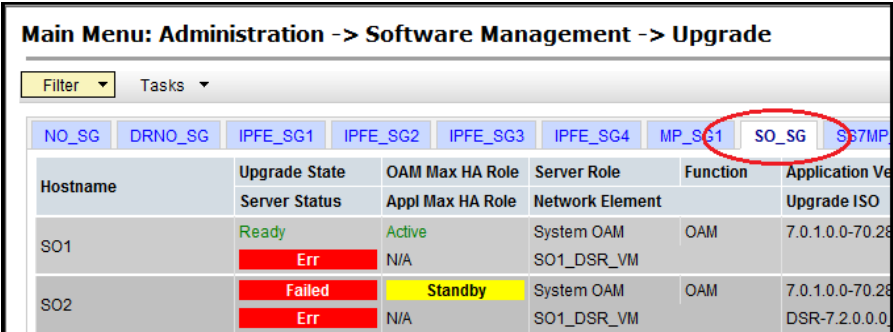
Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure upgrades a server using the platcfg utility.</p> <p>Note: All UI displays are sample representations of upgrade screens. The actual display may vary slightly for those shown.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Log into the appserver	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the appserver:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server_ip> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>

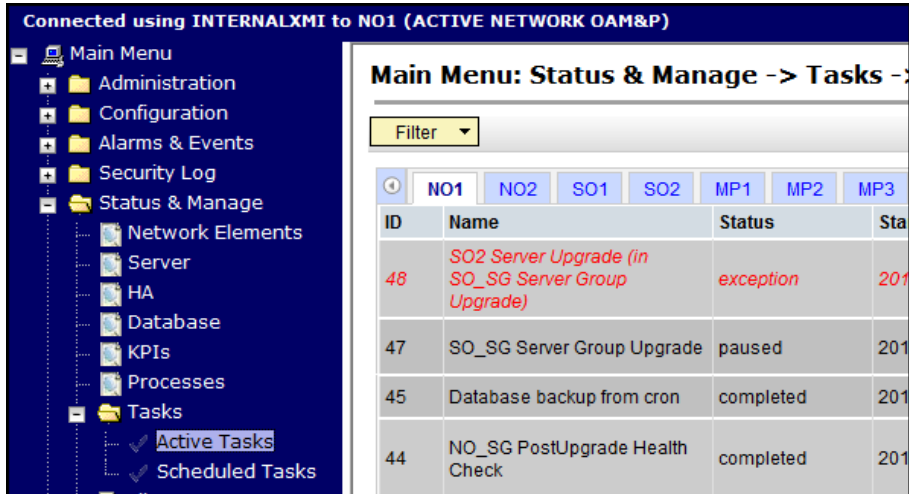
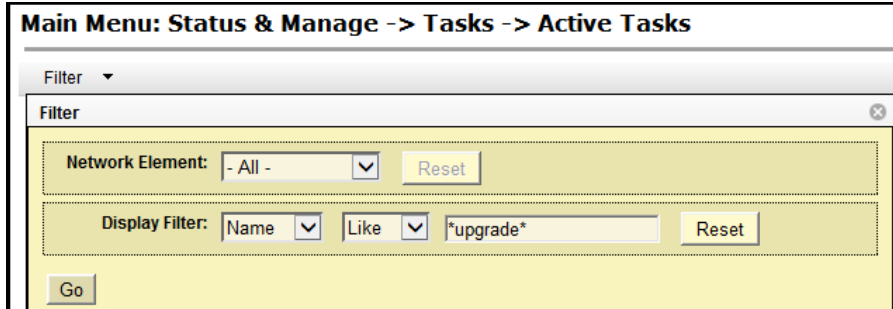
Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Change user	Change to the system user tekelec: <code>sudo su - tekelec</code>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Appserver CLI: Execute command	Execute this command to enable backward compatibility: <code>apps/ndih7-compat.sh disable</code>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat as needed	Repeat this procedure on each IDIH 8.x appserver as needed.


Appendix I. Recover From a Failed Upgrade

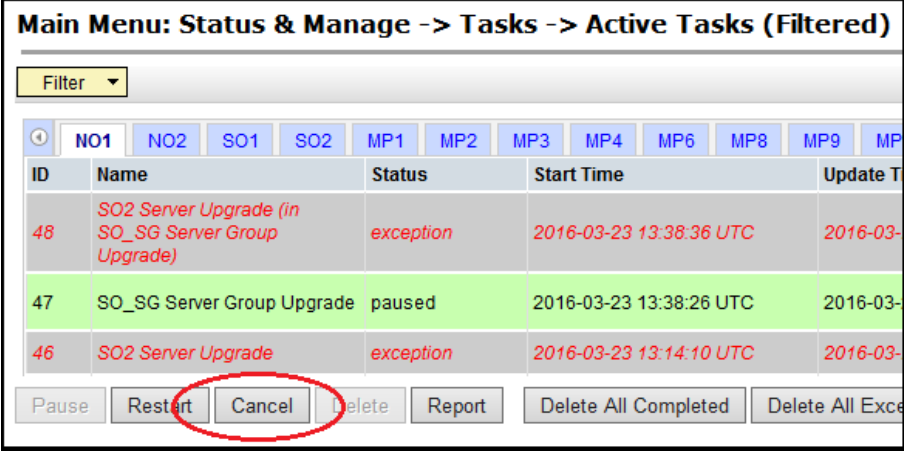
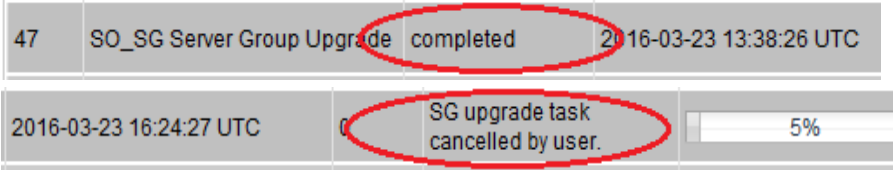
The following procedure provides the steps required to recover a server after a failed upgrade. Due to the complexity of the DSR system and the nature of troubleshooting, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) for guidance while executing this procedure.


Procedure 58. Recover from a Failed Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the basic steps for returning a server to a normal state after an upgrade failure.</p> <p>Note: The server is returned to the source release by this procedure.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Select affected server group containing the failed server	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. Select the server group tab for the server to be recovered.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the failed server was upgraded using the Upgrade Server option, then skip to step 7 of this procedure. If the failed server was upgraded using the Auto Upgrade option, then continue with step 2 of this procedure.

Step #	Procedure	Description																				
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Navigate to the Active Tasks screen to view active tasks</p>	<p>Navigate to Status & Manage > Tasks > Active Tasks.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Main Menu' on the left with 'Tasks' expanded to 'Active Tasks'. On the right, a table titled 'Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks' is displayed. The table has columns for ID, Name, Status, and a partially visible column. The data rows are as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Sta</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>48</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)</td> <td>exception</td> <td>201</td> </tr> <tr> <td>47</td> <td>SO_SG Server Group Upgrade</td> <td>paused</td> <td>201</td> </tr> <tr> <td>45</td> <td>Database backup from cron</td> <td>completed</td> <td>201</td> </tr> <tr> <td>44</td> <td>NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>201</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Name	Status	Sta	48	SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	201	47	SO_SG Server Group Upgrade	paused	201	45	Database backup from cron	completed	201	44	NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	201
ID	Name	Status	Sta																			
48	SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	201																			
47	SO_SG Server Group Upgrade	paused	201																			
45	Database backup from cron	completed	201																			
44	NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	201																			
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Use the filter to locate the server group upgrade task</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Filter option, enter the following filter values: Network Element: All Display Filter: Name Like *upgrade* Click Go.  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Filter' configuration window. It contains the following fields and controls:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Filter (dropdown menu) Filter (input field) Network Element: - All - (dropdown menu) with a Reset button. Display Filter: Name (dropdown menu), Like (dropdown menu), *upgrade* (input field) with a Reset button. Go button. 																				

Step #	Procedure	Description																														
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Identify the upgrade task</p> 	<p>In the search results list, locate the Server Group Upgrade task.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If not already selected, select the tab displaying the hostname of the active NOAM server. Locate the task for the Server Group Upgrade. It shows a status of paused. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks (Filtered)</p> <p>Filter <input type="text"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Start Time</th> <th>Update Time</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>48</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>47</td> <td>SO_SG Server Group Upgrade</td> <td>paused</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>46</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>44</td> <td>NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>42</td> <td>NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Note: Consider the case of an upgrade cycle where it is seen that the upgrade of one or more servers in the server group have status as exception (i.e., failed), while the other servers in that server group have upgraded successfully. However, the server group upgrade task still shows as running. In this case, please cancel the running (upgrade) task for that server group before reattempting ASU for the same.</p> <p>Caution: Before clicking Cancel for the server group upgrade task, ensure the upgrade status of the individual servers in that particular server group should have status as completed or exception (that is, failed for some reason).</p> <p>Make sure you are not cancelling a task with some servers still in running state.</p>	ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time	48	SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC	2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC	47	SO_SG Server Group Upgrade	paused	2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC	2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC	46	SO2 Server Upgrade	exception	2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC	2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC	44	NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC	2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC	42	NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check	completed	2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC	2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC
ID	Name	Status	Start Time	Update Time																												
48	SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)	exception	2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC	2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC																												
47	SO_SG Server Group Upgrade	paused	2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC	2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC																												
46	SO2 Server Upgrade	exception	2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC	2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC																												
44	NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check	completed	2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC	2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC																												
42	NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check	completed	2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC	2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC																												

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Cancel the Server Group Upgrade task</p>	<p>3. Click the Server Group Upgrade task to select it.</p> <p>4. Click Cancel to cancel the task.</p> <p>5. Click OK on the confirmation screen to confirm the cancellation.</p> 
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify the Server Group Upgrade task is cancelled</p>	<p>On the Active Tasks screen, verify the task that was cancelled in step 5 shows a status of completed.</p> 
<p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Failed Server CLI: Inspect upgrade log</p>	<p>Log into the failed server to inspect the upgrade log for the cause of the failure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the failed server: <pre>ssh <XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 5.</p> View or edit the upgrade log at <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</code> for clues to the cause of the upgrade failure. If the upgrade log contains a message similar to the following, inspect the early upgrade log at <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log</code> for additional clues. <pre>1440613685::Early Checks failed for the next upgrade 1440613691::Look at earlyChecks.log for more info</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Although outside of the scope of this document, the user is expected to use standard troubleshooting techniques to clear the alarm condition from the failed server. If troubleshooting assistance is needed, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS). DO NOT PROCEED TO STEP 8 OF THIS PROCEDURE UNTIL THE ALARM CONDITION HAS BEEN CLEARED!
<p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Failed Server CLI: Verify platform alarms are cleared from the failed server</p>	<p>Use the alarmMgr utility to verify all platform alarms have been cleared from the system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus</pre> <p>Example output:</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus SEQ: 2 UPTIME: 827913 BIRTH: 1458738821 TYPE: SET ALARM: TKSPLATMI10 tpdNTPDaemonNotSynchronizedWarning 1.3.6.1 .4.1.323.5.3.18.3.1.3.10 32509 Communications Communications Subsystem Failure</pre> <p>***user troubleshoots alarm and is able to resolve NTP sync issue and clear alarm***</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus [admusr@SO2 ~]\$</pre>
<p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Active NOAM VIP: Re-execute the server upgrade</p>	<p>Return to the upgrade procedure being executed when the failure occurred. Re-execute the upgrade for the failed server using the Upgrade Server option.</p> <p>Note: Once a server has failed while using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option, the Auto Upgrade option cannot be used again on that server group. The remaining servers in that server group must be upgraded using the Upgrade Server option.</p>

Appendix J. Critical and Major Alarms Analysis

The following procedure identifies critical and major alarms that should be resolved before proceeding with an upgrade and backout.

Note: During any time of upgrade if the **31149- DB Late Write Nonactive** alarm displays, ignore it. This alarm does not have any effect on functionality.

Procedure 59. Verify Critical and Major Alarms in the System Before the Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure identifies the current alarms in the system before an upgrade can start. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM VIP: Log/View all current alarms at the NOAM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 2. Click Report to generate an Alarms report. 3. Save the report and/or print the report.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Analyze the active alarms data	<p>Reference Table 25 and Table 26 for the alarms.</p> <p>If any alarms listed in the Table 25 and Table 26 display in the system, resolve the alarms before starting the upgrade.</p> <p>Refer to Reference [7] DSR Alarms and KPIs Reference for specific alarm in-depth details.</p> <p>Two categories from the alarm list.</p> <p>High impact alarms</p> <p>It's almost certain the presence of this alarm ID in the active alarm list should prevent upgrade from continuing. Alarms of this category should be resolved before upgrading.</p> <p>Medium impact alarms</p> <p>It's likely/possible the presence of this alarm ID should prevent upgrade from continuing; concurrence needed. Alarms of this category may/may not be resolved before upgrading.</p> <p>Some ideas of inclusion of alarms in the categories include.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any alarm indicating an actual hardware error, or an impending/potential hardware error, is automatically mentioned in high impact alarm list. Included in this category are all Platform Group alarms (PLAT) of severity Minor, Major, and Critical. • If an alarm ID indicates some sort of (pending) resource exhaustion issue or other threshold crossed condition, it is almost always mentioned in Medium impact alarms. Resource exhaustion states have to be fixed before upgrading.

Table 25. High Impact Alarms

Alarm ID	Name
5010	Unknown Linux iptables command error
5011	System or platform error prohibiting operation

Alarm ID	Name
10000	Incompatible database version
10134	Server Upgrade Failed
10200	Remote database initialization in progress
19217	Node isolated - all links down
19805	Communication Agent Failed to Align Connection
19855	Communication Agent Resource Has Multiple Actives
19901	CFG-DB Validation Error
19902	CFG-DB Update Failure
19903	CFG-DB post-update Error
19904	CFG-DB post-update Failure
22223	MpMemCongested
22950	Connection Status Inconsistency Exists
22961	Insufficient Memory for Feature Set
22733	SBR Failed to Free Binding Memory After PCRF Pooling Binding Migration
22734	Policy and Charging Unexpected Stack Event Version
25500	No DA-MP Leader Detected
25510	Multiple DA-MP Leader Detected
31101	Database replication to slave failure
31116	Excessive shared memory
31117	Low disk free
31125	Database durability degraded
31128	ADIC Found Error
31133	DB Replication Switchover Exceeds Threshold
31215	Process resources exceeded
31288	HA Site Configuration Error
32100	Breaker Panel Feed Unavailable
32101	Breaker Panel Breaker Failure
32102	Breaker Panel Monitoring Failure
32103	Power Feed Unavailable
32104	Power Supply 1 Failure
32105	Power Supply 2 Failure
32106	Power Supply 3 Failure
32107	Raid Feed Unavailable
32108	Raid Power 1 Failure
32109	Raid Power 2 Failure

Alarm ID	Name
32110	Raid Power 3 Failure
32111	Device Failure
32112	Device Interface Failure
32113	Uncorrectable ECC memory error
32114	SNMP get failure
32115	TPD NTP Daemon Not Synchronized Failure
32116	TPD Server's Time Has Gone Backwards
32117	TPD NTP Offset Check Failure
32300	Server fan failure
32301	Server internal disk error
32302	Server RAID disk error
32303	Server Platform error
32304	Server file system error
32305	Server Platform process error
32306	Server RAM shortage error
32307	Server swap space shortage failure
32308	Server provisioning network error
32309	Eagle Network A Error
32310	Eagle Network B Error
32311	Sync Network Error
32312	Server disk space shortage error
32313	Server default route network error
32314	Server temperature error
32315	Server mainboard voltage error
32316	Server power feed error
32317	Server disk health test error
32318	Server disk unavailable error
32319	Device error
32320	Device interface error
32321	Correctable ECC memory error
32322	Power Supply A error
32323	Power Supply B error
32324	Breaker panel feed error
32325	Breaker panel breaker error
32326	Breaker panel monitoring error

Alarm ID	Name
32327	Server HA Keep alive error
32328	DRBD is unavailable
32329	DRBD is not replicating
32330	DRBD peer problem
32331	HP disk problem
32332	HP Smart Array controller problem
32333	HP hpacucliStatus utility problem
32334	Multipath device access link problem
32335	Switch link down error
32336	Half Open Socket Limit
32337	Flash Program Failure
32338	Serial Mezzanine Unseated
32339	TPD Max Number Of Running Processes Error
32340	TPD NTP Daemon Not Synchronized Error
32341	TPD NTP Daemon Not Synchronized Error
32342	NTP Offset Check Error
32343	TPD RAID disk
32344	TPD RAID controller problem
32345	Server Upgrade snapshot(s) invalid
32346	OEM hardware management service reports an error
32347	The hwmgmtcliStatus daemon needs intervention
32348	FIPS subsystem problem
32349	File Tampering
32350	Security Process Terminated
32500	Server disk space shortage warning
32501	Server application process error
32502	Server hardware configuration error
32503	Server RAM shortage warning
32504	Software Configuration Error
32505	Server swap space shortage warning
32506	Server default router not defined
32507	Server temperature warning
32508	Server core file detected
32509	Server NTP Daemon not synchronized
32510	CMOS battery voltage low

Alarm ID	Name
32511	Server disk self-test warning
32512	Device warning
32513	Device interface warning
32514	Server reboot watchdog initiated
32515	Server HA failover inhibited
32516	Server HA Active to Standby transition
32517	Server HA Standby to Active transition
32518	Platform Health Check failure
32519	NTP Offset Check failure
32520	NTP Stratum Check failure
32521	SAS Presence Sensor Missing
32522	SAS Drive Missing
32523	DRBD failover busy
32524	HP disk resync
32525	Telco Fan Warning
32526	Telco Temperature Warning
32527	Telco Power Supply Warning
32528	Invalid BIOS value
32529	Server Kernel Dump File Detected
32530	TPD Upgrade Failed
32531	Half Open Socket Warning Limit
32532	Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject
32533	TPD Max Number Of Running Processes Warning
32534	TPD NTP Source Is Bad Warning
32535	TPD RAID disk resync
32536	TPD Server Upgrade snapshot(s) warning
32537	FIPS subsystem warning event
32538	Platform Data Collection Error
32539	Server Patch Pending Accept/Reject
32540	CPU Power limit mismatch

Table 26. Medium Impact Alarms

Alarm ID	Name
5002	IPFE Address configuration error
5003	IPFE state sync run error

Alarm ID	Name
5004	IPFE IP tables configuration error
5006	Error reading from Ethernet device
5012	Signaling interface heartbeat timeout
5013	Throttling traffic
5100	Traffic overload
5101	CPU Overload
5102	Disk Becoming Full
5103	Memory Overload
10003	Database backup failed
10006	Database restoration failed
10020	Backup failure
10117	Health Check Failed
10118	Health Check Not Run
10121	Server Group Upgrade Cancelled - Validation Failed
10123	Server Group Upgrade Failed
10131	Server Upgrade Cancelled (Validation Failed)
10133	Server Upgrade Failed
10141	Site Upgrade Cancelled (Validation Failed)
10143	Site Upgrade Failed
19200	RSP/Destination unavailable
19202	Linkset unavailable
19204	Preferred route unavailable
19246	Local SCCP subsystem prohibited
19251	Ingress message rate
19252	PDU buffer pool utilization
19253	SCCP stack event queue utilization
19254	M3RL stack event queue utilization
19255	M3RL network management event queue utilization
19256	M3UA stack event queue utilization
19258	SCTP Aggregate Egress queue utilization
19251	Ingress message rate
19252	PDU buffer pool utilization
19253	SCCP stack event queue utilization
19254	M3RL stack event queue utilization
19255	M3RL network management event queue utilization

Alarm ID	Name
19256	M3UA stack event queue utilization
19258	SCTP Aggregate Egress queue utilization
19272	TCAP active dialogue utilization
19273	TCAP active operation utilization
19274	TCAP stack event queue utilization
19276	SCCP Egress Message Rate
19408	Single Transport Egress-Queue Utilization
19800	Communication Agent Connection Down
19803	Communication Agent stack event queue utilization
19806	Communication Agent CommMessage mempool utilization
19807	Communication Agent User Data FIFO Queue Utilization
19808	Communication Agent Connection FIFO Queue utilization
19818	Communication Agent DataEvent Mempool utilization
19820	Communication Agent Routed Service Unavailable
19824	Communication Agent Pending Transaction Utilization
19825	Communication Agent Transaction Failure Rate
19827	SMS stack event queue utilization
19846	Communication Agent Resource Degraded
19847	Communication Agent Resource Unavailable
19848	Communication Agent Resource Error
19860	Communication Agent Configuration Daemon Table Monitoring Failure
19861	Communication Agent Configuration Daemon Script Failure
19862	Communication Agent Ingress Stack Event Rate
19900	Process CPU Utilization
19905	Measurement Initialization Failure
19910	Message Discarded at Test Connection
8000-001	MpEvFsmException_SocketFailure
8000-002	MpEvFsmException_BindFailure
8000-003	MpEvFsmException_OptionFailure
8000-101	MpEvFsmException_ListenFailure
8002-003	MpEvRxException_CpuCongested
8002-004	MpEvRxException_SigEvPoolCongested
8002-006	MpEvRxException_DstMpCongested
8002-007	MpEvRxException_DrIReqQueueCongested
8002-008	MpEvRxException_DrIAnsQueueCongested

Alarm ID	Name
8002-009	MpEvRxException_ComAgentCongested
8002-203	MpEvRxException_RadiusMsgPoolCongested
8006-101	EvFsmException_SocketFailure
8011	EcRate
8013	MpNgnPsStateMismatch
8200	MpRadiusMsgPoolCongested
8201	RcIRxTaskQueueCongested
8202	RcItrPoolCongested
8203	RcITxTaskQueueCongested
8204	RcIEtrPoolCongested
22016	Peer Node Alarm Aggregation Threshold
22017	Route List Alarm Aggregation Threshold
22056	Connection Admin State Inconsistency Exists
22200	MpCpuCongested
22201	MpRxAllRate
22202	MpDiamMsgPoolCongested
22203	PTR Buffer Pool Utilization
22204	Request Message Queue Utilization
22205	Answer Message Queue Utilization
22206	Reroute Queue Utilization
22207	DcITxTaskQueueCongested
22208	DcITxConnQueueCongested
22214	Message Copy Queue Utilization
22221	Routing MPS Rate
22222	Long Timeout PTR Buffer Pool Utilization
22349	IPFE Connection Alarm Aggregation Threshold
22350	Fixed Connection Alarm Aggregation Threshold
22407	Routing attempt failed due to internal database inconsistency failure
22500	DSR Application Unavailable
22501	DSR Application Degraded
22502	DSR Application Request Message Queue Utilization
22503	DSR Application Answer Message Queue Utilization
22504	DSR Application Ingress Message Rate
22607	Routing attempt failed due to DRL queue exhaustion
22608	Database query could not be sent due to DB congestion


Alarm ID	Name
22609	Database connection exhausted
22631	FABR DP Response Task Message Queue Utilization
22632	COM Agent Registration Failure
22703	Diameter Message Routing Failure Due to Full DRL Queue
22710	SBR Sessions Threshold Exceeded
22711	SBR Database Error
22712	SBR Communication Error
22717	SBR Alternate Key Creation Failure Rate
22720	Policy SBR To PCA Response Queue Utilization Threshold Exceeded
22721	Policy and Charging Server In Congestion
22722	Policy Binding Sub-resource Unavailable
22723	Policy and Charging Session Sub-resource Unavailable
22724	SBR Memory Utilization Threshold Exceeded
22725	SBR Server In Congestion
22726	SBR Queue Utilization Threshold Exceeded
22727	SBR Initialization Failure
22728	SBR Bindings Threshold Exceeded
22729	PCRF Not Configured
22730	Policy and Charging Configuration Error
22731	Policy and Charging Database Inconsistency
22732	SBR Process CPU Utilization Threshold Exceeded
22737	Configuration Database Not Synced
22740	SBR Reconfiguration Plan Completion Failure
31100	Database replication fault
31102	Database replication from master failure
31103	DB Replication update fault
31104	DB Replication latency over threshold
31106	Database merge to parent failure
31107	Database merge from child failure
31108	Database merge latency over threshold
31113	DB replication manually disabled
31114	DB replication over SOAP has failed
31118	Database disk store fault
31121	Low disk free early warning
31122	Excessive shared memory early warning


Alarm ID	Name
31124	ADIC error
31126	Audit blocked
31130	Network health warning
31131	DB Ousted Throttle Behind
31134	DB Site Replication To Slave Failure
31135	DB Site Replication to Master Failure
31137	DB Site Replication Latency Over Threshold
31146	DB mastership fault
31147	DB upsynclog overrun
31200	Process management fault
31201	Process not running
31202	Unkillable zombie process
31209	Hostname lookup failed
31217	Network Health Warning
31220	HA configuration monitor fault
31113	DB replication manually disabled
31114	DB replication over SOAP has failed
31118	Database disk store fault
31121	Low disk free early warning
31122	Excessive shared memory early warning
31124	ADIC error
31126	Audit blocked
31130	Network health warning
31131	DB Ousted Throttle Behind
31134	DB Site Replication To Slave Failure
31135	DB Site Replication to Master Failure
31137	DB Site Replication Latency Over Threshold
31146	DB mastership fault
31147	DB upsynclog overrun
31200	Process management fault
31201	Process not running
31202	Unkillable zombie process
31209	Hostname lookup failed
31217	Network Health Warning
31220	HA configuration monitor fault


Alarm ID	Name
31221	HA alarm monitor fault
31222	HA not configured
31233	HA Heartbeat transmit failure
31224	HA configuration error
31225	HA service start failure
31226	HA availability status degraded
31228	HA standby offline
31230	Recent alarm processing fault
31231	Platform alarm agent fault
31233	HA Path Down
31234	Untrusted Time Upon Initialization
31234	Untrusted time After Initialization
31236	HA Link Down
31282	HA Management Fault
31283	Lost Communication with server
31322	HA Configuration Error
33001	Diameter-to-MAP Service Registration Failure on DA-MP
33105	Routing Attempt failed due to queue exhaustion
33120	Policy SBR Binding Sub-Resource Unavailable
33301	Update Config Data Failure
33303	U-SBR Event Queue Utilization
33310	U-SBR Sub-resource Unavailable
33312	DCA Script Generation Error
33301	Update Config Data Failure

Appendix K. Additional Backout Steps

Procedure 60. Additional Backout Steps for NOAM, SOAM, and SBR Server(s)


Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about additional backout steps for NOAM, SOAM and SBR server(s) to support backout for major upgrade release paths.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Server CLI: Log into the server (if not already done)</p> 	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the server under backout:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> <p>If server is NOAM or SOAM server, execute steps 2 to 5 and if server is SBR server, execute steps 6. to 7.</p> <p>Please note down the hostname of the server on which these steps are executed. Once all the servers in a server group will be backed out then the additional post-backout steps will be executed to revert back the changes done in this procedure.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Server CLI: Set the resource as optional For OAM servers only</p>	<p>Note: Make sure the resource being set is in system. Some of the resources shown are introduced in different releases.</p> <p>If the resource is not in the system, presence check will not result any output records. In this case, skip updating these fields for the resource not in the system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check for the resource: <pre>igt -E HaResourceCfg where "name='<resource_name>'"</pre> 2. Execute this command: <pre>iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaResourceCfg where "name='DSROAM_Proc'"</pre> <p>These commands change/update the results of some records.</p>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Server CLI: Restart the HTTPD service For OAM servers only</p>	<p>Execute this command:</p> <pre>sudo service httpd restart</pre>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Active NOAM/SOAM Server CLI: Log into the server (if not already done)</p>	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active NOAM/SOAM server in the same server group, in which server is under backout:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify that the replication is working fine. For OAM servers only 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Execute this command on an active NOAM/SOAM server in the same server group being backed out: <code>irepstat</code> Verify the <code>irepstat</code> command displays a replication row for the server which is being backed out. Note the replication status is Active before proceeding, if it is Audit, then wait until replication becomes Active. If this step is missed, data is lost and is unrecoverable. Example: Here Ford-B-NO is Active NOAM Server and Ford-A-NO is backed out. <pre>Ford-B-NO A3301.157 Ford-B-NO 09:32:17 [Rw] Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- AA To P0 Ford-A-NO Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.12%cpu 1.88k/s AA To P1 Chevy-DRNO-B Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.08%cpu 1.89k/s AB To D0 Camaro-SO-B Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.09%cpu 1.89k/s AB To D0 Nova-SO-B Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.08%cpu 1.90k/s AB To D0 Pinto-SO-B Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.10%cpu 1.89k/s AB To D0 Mustang-SO-B Active 0 0.00 1%R 0.10%cpu 2.14k/s</pre> Press q if you want to exit the <code>irepstat</code> command output. Execute <code>irepstat</code> again, if required.
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Setting the resource as optional For SBR servers only	<p>Note: Make sure the resource being set is in the system. Some of the resources listed below are introduced in different releases.</p> <p>If a resource is not in the system, presence check does not result in any output records. In this case, do not update the fields for the resource.</p> <p>Resource presence can be checked using:-</p> <pre>iqt -E HaResourceCfg where "name='<resource_name>'"</pre> <p>For example:-</p> <pre>iqt -E HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'"</pre> <p>Execute this command for Session SBR only:</p> <pre>iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrSBaseRepl'" iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'" iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='pSbrSessionRes'"</pre> <p>Execute this command for Binding SBR only:</p> <pre>iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrBBaseRepl'" iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'" iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrBindingRes'"</pre> <p>These commands change/update the results of some records.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Verify that the replication is working fine For SBR servers only 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Execute this command on an active SBR server in the same server group as the server being backed out: <code>irepstat</code> Verify the <code>irepstat</code> command displays a replication row for the server which is being backed out. Note the replication status is Active before proceeding, if it is Audit, then wait until replication becomes Active. If this step is missed, data is lost and is unrecoverable. Example: Here Pinto-SBR-2 is Active SBR Server and Pinto-SBR-1 is backed out. Also, on Binding SBR, resource will be <code>pSbrBindingPolicy</code> And on Session SBR, resource will be <code>pSbrSessionPolicy</code> <pre>Pinto-SBR-2 C3783.034 Pinto-SBR-2 13:39:38 [Rw] Policy 0 ActStb [DbReplication] ----- BC From D0 Pinto-SO-B Active 0 0.10 ^0.10%cpu 67.0/s CC To P0 Pinto-SBR-1 Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.31%cpu 30.9/s CC To P1 Mustang-SBR-3 Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.28%cpu 39.6/s Policy 21 pSbrBindingPolicy [pSbrBBaseRepl] ----- CC To P0 Pinto-SBR-1 Active 0 0.10 1%S 0.63%cpu 186k/s CC To P1 Mustang-SBR-3 Active 2 0.13 1%S 0.55%cpu 189k/s</pre> Press q if you want to exit the <code>irepstat</code> command output. Execute <code>irepstat</code> again, if required.

Appendix L. Additional Post-Backout Steps


Procedure 61. Additional Post Backout Steps for NOAM, SOAM, and SBR Server(s)

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about additional post backout steps for NOAM, SOAM and SBR server(s) to support backout for major upgrade release paths.</p> <p>This procedure is executed only after all servers in the same server group are backed out.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Log into the server (if not already done)</p> 	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the server under backout:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p> <p>If the server is an NOAM or SOAM server, execute step 2.</p> <p>If the server is an SBR server, execute steps 3.</p> <p>Note the hostname of the server on which these steps are executed. Once all servers in a server group are backed out, additional post-backout steps are executed to revert the changes done in this procedure.</p> <p>Execute the following commands on servers where the services are in pending state:</p> <pre>rm -rf /etc/ld.so.cache echo "/usr/TKLC/dsr/lib" sudo tee -a /etc/ld.so.conf.d/dsr.conf sudo cat /etc/ld.so.conf.d/dsr.conf sudo ldconfig</pre> <p>Check for configured libraries, for example:</p> <pre>sudo ldconfig -p grep -i pdra</pre> <p>Output must have the following information:</p> <pre>libPdtraTraps.so (libc6,x86-64) => /usr/TKLC/dsr/lib/libPdtraTraps.so</pre> <p>Check whether all the services are Up:</p> <pre>pl</pre>
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Set the resource as optional For OAM servers only</p>	<p>Note: Make sure the resource getting set is in system. Some of resources shown are introduced in different releases.</p> <p>If the resource is not in the system, presence check will not result any output records. In this case, skip updating these fields for the resource not in the system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check for the resource: <pre>iqt -E HaResourceCfg where "name='<resource_name>'"</pre> 2. Execute this command: <pre>iset -W -foptional='Yes' HaResourceCfg where "name='DSROAM_Proc'"</pre> <p>These commands change/update the results of some records.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
3. □	Server CLI: Setting the resource as optional For SBR servers only	<p>Note: Make sure the resource being set is in the system. Some of the resources listed below are introduced in different releases.</p> <p>If a resource is not in the system, presence check does not result in any output records. In this case, do not update the fields for the resource.</p> <p>Resource presence can be checked using:-</p> <pre>igt -E HaResourceCfg where "name='<resource_name>'"</pre> <p>For example:-</p> <pre>igt -E HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'"</pre> <p>Execute this command for Session SBR only:</p> <pre>iset -W -foptional='No' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrSBaseRepl'" iset -W -foptional='No' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'" iset -W -foptional='No' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='pSbrSessionRes'"</pre> <p>Execute this command for Binding SBR only:</p> <pre>iset -W -foptional='No' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrBBaseRepl'" iset -W -foptional='No' HaClusterResourceCfg where "resource='uSbrRes'" iset -W -foptional='No' HaResourceCfg where "name='pSbrBindingRes'"</pre> <p>These commands change/update the results of some records. Repeat this procedure for other servers in the server group being backed out.</p>

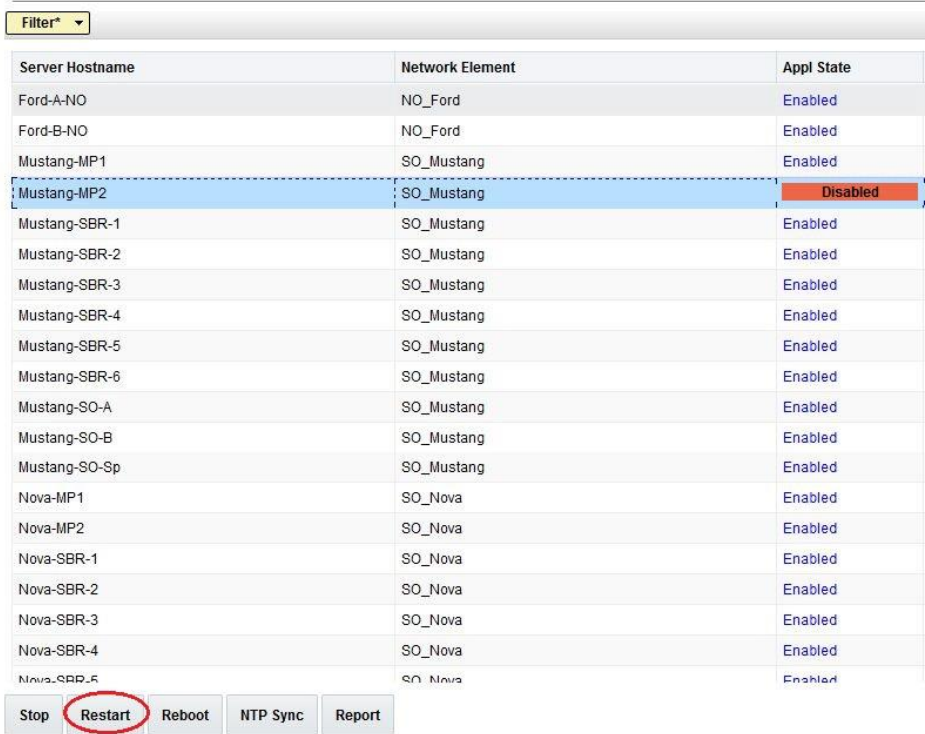
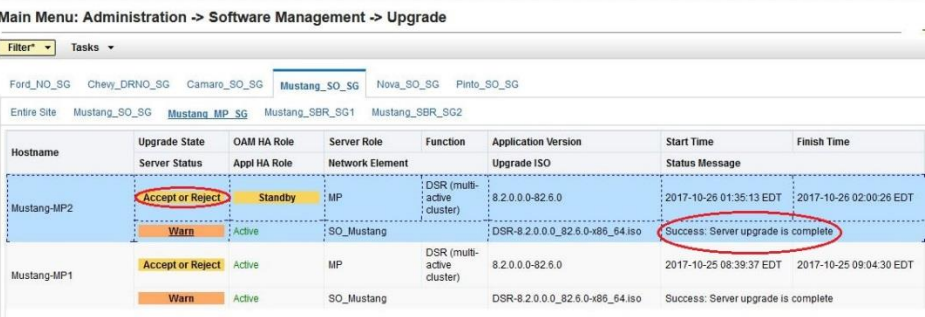
Appendix M. Manual Completion of Server Upgrade

Procedure 62. Manual Completion of Server Upgrade

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about manual completion of server upgrade.</p> <p>Note: In the unlikely event that after the upgrade, if the Upgrade State of server is Backout Ready and the Status Message displays Server could not restart the application to complete the upgrade, then perform to restore the server to full operational status and return to this step to continue the upgrade. Perform Appendix U to create a link of Comagent</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Login: Log into the server (if not already done)</p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;"> <p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p> </div> <p>Log into the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 


Step #	Procedure	Description																																																																																										
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAMP VIP GUI: Verify server status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status and Manage > HA. Locate the server you want to upgrade. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is Standby. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> HA</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Filter* <input type="text"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Application HA Role</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Mate Hostname List</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Ford-A-NO</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Ford-B-NO</td> <td>NO_Ford</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ford-B-NO</td> <td>Active</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Ford-A-NO</td> <td>NO_Ford</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-MP2</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP2</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Mustang-MP1</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-MP1</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-MP2</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-MP2</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-MP1</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-SO-Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-SO-Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SO-A Mustang-SO-B</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-SBR-1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SBR-2 Pinto-SBR-3</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-SBR-2</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-3</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-SBR-3</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-2</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-SBR-1</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-2</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-SBR-2</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-1</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-SBR-3</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-SBR-1 Mustang-SBR-2</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><input type="button" value="Edit"/></p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Edit. 	Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element	Ford-A-NO	Standby	N/A	Active	Ford-B-NO	NO_Ford	Ford-B-NO	Active	N/A	Active	Ford-A-NO	NO_Ford	Mustang-MP1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-MP2	SO_Mustang	Mustang-MP2	Standby	Active	Standby	Mustang-MP1	SO_Mustang	Pinto-MP1	Standby	Active	Active	Pinto-MP2	SO_Pinto	Pinto-MP2	Active	Active	Active	Pinto-MP1	SO_Pinto	Mustang-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B	SO_Mustang	Pinto-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Mustang-SO-A Mustang-SO-B	SO_Pinto	Mustang-SBR-1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-SBR-2 Pinto-SBR-3	SO_Mustang	Mustang-SBR-2	Standby	Standby	Active	Mustang-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-3	SO_Mustang	Mustang-SBR-3	Spare	Spare	Active	Pinto-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-2	SO_Mustang	Pinto-SBR-1	Standby	Standby	Active	Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-2	SO_Pinto	Pinto-SBR-2	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-1	SO_Pinto	Pinto-SBR-3	Spare	Spare	Active	Mustang-SBR-1 Mustang-SBR-2	SO_Pinto
Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element																																																																																							
Ford-A-NO	Standby	N/A	Active	Ford-B-NO	NO_Ford																																																																																							
Ford-B-NO	Active	N/A	Active	Ford-A-NO	NO_Ford																																																																																							
Mustang-MP1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-MP2	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Mustang-MP2	Standby	Active	Standby	Mustang-MP1	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Pinto-MP1	Standby	Active	Active	Pinto-MP2	SO_Pinto																																																																																							
Pinto-MP2	Active	Active	Active	Pinto-MP1	SO_Pinto																																																																																							
Mustang-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Pinto-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Mustang-SO-A Mustang-SO-B	SO_Pinto																																																																																							
Mustang-SBR-1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-SBR-2 Pinto-SBR-3	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Mustang-SBR-2	Standby	Standby	Active	Mustang-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-3	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Mustang-SBR-3	Spare	Spare	Active	Pinto-SBR-1 Pinto-SBR-2	SO_Mustang																																																																																							
Pinto-SBR-1	Standby	Standby	Active	Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-2	SO_Pinto																																																																																							
Pinto-SBR-2	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-SBR-3 Pinto-SBR-1	SO_Pinto																																																																																							
Pinto-SBR-3	Spare	Spare	Active	Mustang-SBR-1 Mustang-SBR-2	SO_Pinto																																																																																							

Step #	Procedure	Description																																																
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Change role</p>	<p>1. Change the Max Allowed HA Role to Active. 2. Click OK.</p> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> HA [Edit]</p> <hr/> <p>Modifying HA attributes</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Ford-A-NO</td> <td>Active <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-A-NO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ford-B-NO</td> <td>Active <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-B-NO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP1</td> <td>Active <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP2</td> <td>Active <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-MP1</td> <td>Active <input type="button" value="v"/></td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for Pinto-MP1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Max Allowed HA Role	Description	Ford-A-NO	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-A-NO	Ford-B-NO	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-B-NO	Mustang-MP1	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP1	Mustang-MP2	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP2	Pinto-MP1	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Pinto-MP1																														
Hostname	Max Allowed HA Role	Description																																																
Ford-A-NO	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-A-NO																																																
Ford-B-NO	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Ford-B-NO																																																
Mustang-MP1	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP1																																																
Mustang-MP2	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Mustang-MP2																																																
Pinto-MP1	Active <input type="button" value="v"/>	The maximum desired HA Role for Pinto-MP1																																																
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Verify change</p>	<p>Verify the Max Allowed HA Role changes to Active.</p> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> HA</p> <p>Filter* <input type="button" value="v"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Application HA Role</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Mate Hostname List</th> <th>Network Element</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Ford-A-NO</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Ford-B-NO</td> <td>NO_Ford</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ford-B-NO</td> <td>Active</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Ford-A-NO</td> <td>NO_Ford</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-MP2</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-MP2</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Mustang-MP1</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-MP1</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-MP2</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pinto-MP2</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-MP1</td> <td>SO_Pinto</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mustang-SO-Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B</td> <td>SO_Mustang</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element	Ford-A-NO	Standby	N/A	Active	Ford-B-NO	NO_Ford	Ford-B-NO	Active	N/A	Active	Ford-A-NO	NO_Ford	Mustang-MP1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-MP2	SO_Mustang	Mustang-MP2	Standby	Active	Active	Mustang-MP1	SO_Mustang	Pinto-MP1	Standby	Active	Active	Pinto-MP2	SO_Pinto	Pinto-MP2	Active	Active	Active	Pinto-MP1	SO_Pinto	Mustang-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B	SO_Mustang
Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element																																													
Ford-A-NO	Standby	N/A	Active	Ford-B-NO	NO_Ford																																													
Ford-B-NO	Active	N/A	Active	Ford-A-NO	NO_Ford																																													
Mustang-MP1	Active	Active	Active	Mustang-MP2	SO_Mustang																																													
Mustang-MP2	Standby	Active	Active	Mustang-MP1	SO_Mustang																																													
Pinto-MP1	Standby	Active	Active	Pinto-MP2	SO_Pinto																																													
Pinto-MP2	Active	Active	Active	Pinto-MP1	SO_Pinto																																													
Mustang-SO-Sp	Spare	N/A	Active	Pinto-SO-A Pinto-SO-B	SO_Mustang																																													

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Restart the server</p>	<p>1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Server.</p> <p>2. Select the server to upgrade.</p> <p>3. Click Restart.</p> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Server</p>  <p>After a few minutes, the Appl State change to Enabled.</p>
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Verify status</p>	<p>1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade.</p> <p>2. Verify the Upgrade State changes to Accept or Reject and the Status Message changes to Success: Server manually completed.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> 

Appendix N. Identify the DC server


Procedure 63. Identification of the DC server

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details to identify the DC server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p> </div> <p>Log into the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Select an MP server</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Configuration > Server Groups. 2. Select an MP server from the server group that needs to be upgraded.
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Log into MP Server using CLI</p> <p>SSH to MP server chosen above</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the MP server identified in Step 1. <pre>ssh admusr@<MP_SERVER_XMI> password: <enter password></pre> 2. Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server

Step #	Procedure	Description
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	MP Server CLI: Find DC server	<p>Identify the DC server in the server group with this command: <code>ha.info -d</code></p> <p>If the server is the DC server, then output is similar to this: <pre>[admusr@X6201-MP1 ~]\$ ha.info -d Output from Node ID: X6201-MP1 Report Time: 12/14/2017 12:05:10.905 *** ** Election Mgr: C2121 (27a64d) *** DC: X6201-MP1 Generation: 2 State: DC Elected: 12/12/2017 09:18:08.905 Other Non-DC Group Members: X6201-MP5 X6201-MP3 X6201-MP4 X6201-MP2 DC Group Candidates: <none> *** ** End of Election Mgr: C2121 ***</pre></p> <p>If the server is not the DC server, then output is similar to this: <pre>[admusr@X6201-MP3 ~]\$ ha.info -d Output from Node ID: X6201-MP3 Report Time: 12/14/2017 12:05:38.314 *** ** Election Mgr: C2121 (27a64d) *** DC: X6201-MP1 Generation: 2 State: NON-DC ATTN: Reported from Non-DC node. Execute ha.info on DC for full status. DC Group Candidates: <none> *** ** End of Election Mgr: C2121 ***</pre></p>

Appendix O. Limitations of Automated Server Group and Automated Site Upgrade

For multi-active server groups, such as DA-MP/vSTP MPs, non-deterministic server selection **could possibly** result in a network outage during the upgrade. In certain scenarios, customer preferences or requirements can result in configurations in which it is imperative that DA-MP servers must be, or conversely, cannot be, upgraded together. These scenarios are described in this section with the recommendation that customers NOT use ASG if any of these exists in their network.



CAUTION

Oracle's recommendation for any customer whose network aligns with any of the following scenarios is that the Automated Server Group upgrade should NOT be used on multi-active DA-MP server groups. Use of ASG risks a potential network outage.

For Automated Site Upgrade, following limitations can be solved by rearranging/adding the upgrade cycles. If the user does not want to create a custom upgrade plan by rearranging/adding cycles then in that case manual upgrade section 5.3 method should be used.

Specialized Fixed Diameter Connections

In this scenario, each peer node is configured to connect to two specific DA-MPs for local redundancy (Figure 18). With ASG/ASU setup for 50% minimum availability, three of the DA-MPs in the server group are upgraded in parallel. However, it is not possible to determine in advance which three DA-MPs are selected. Although the DSR has redundant connections to the peer nodes, an unfortunate selection of servers for upgrade could result in an outage. Upgrade cycle 1 takes out both DA-MPs connected to the unhappy peer. This peer is isolated for the duration of the upgrade.

The happy peer is connected to DA-MPs that are selected by ASG/ASU for different upgrade cycles. This peer is never isolated during the upgrade.

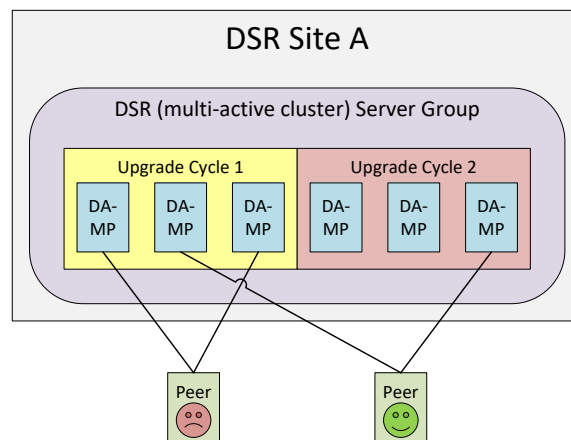


Figure 18. Specialized Fixed Diameter Connections

Specialized Floating Diameter Connections

In this scenario, each peer node is configured to connect to an IPFE TSA address hosted by a set of DA-MPs. When any particular TSA contains only a subset of the server group MPs, and the DSR upgrade logic happens to select that subset of MPs for simultaneous upgrade, then there is a signaling outage for that TSA. This scenario is depicted in Figure 19.

TSA1 is distributed across the first three DA-MPs, whereas TSA2 is distributed across all six DA-MPs. If ASG/ASU is initiated with 50% minimum availability, the DSR could select all three of the DA-MPs hosting TSA1 in the first upgrade cycle. The unhappy peer is isolated for the duration of upgrade cycle 1.

The happy peer is connected to TSA2, which is hosted by the DA-MP servers in such a way that the TSA is evenly hosted in both upgrade cycles. This peer is never isolated during the upgrade.

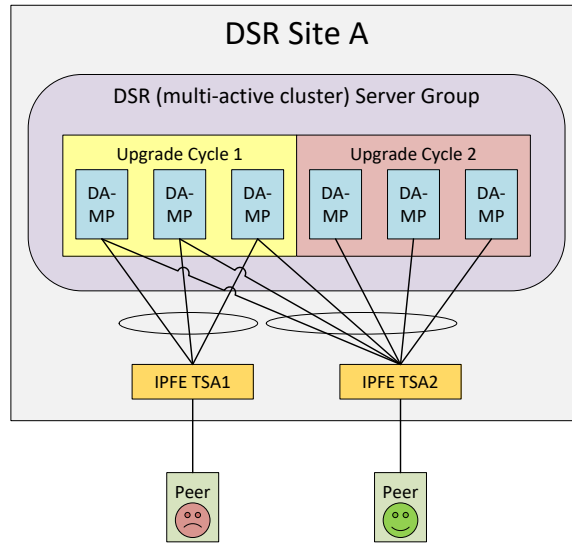


Figure 19. Specialized Floating Diameter Connections

Specialized Distribution of DSR Features

In this scenario, the customer has decided to enable P-DRA and RBAR on four DA-MP servers and DCA on two DA-MP servers, consistent with expected traffic load. With ASG setup for 50% minimum availability, the DA-MP server group is upgraded in two cycles. RBAR and P-DRA happen to be hosted by DA-MP servers selected by ASG/ASU to be in different upgrade cycles, albeit unbalanced. The RBAR peer is only marginally happy because during upgrade cycle 1, only 25% of RBAR and P-DRA capacity is available, even though the customer specified 50% availability.

DCA happens to be hosted by DA-MP servers selected by ASG/ASU to be in upgrade cycle 2. The DCA peer is unhappy because DCA is completely unavailable during upgrade cycle 2.

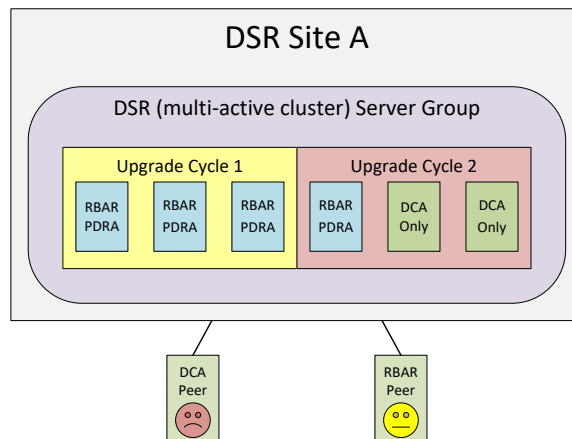


Figure 20. Specialized Distribution of DSR Features

Appendix P. Advanced Health Check Procedure

Procedure 64. Firewall Check for DNS Port 53

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure verifies the UDP/TCP port 53 is open between NOAM and each DR-NOAM site, NOAM and each SOAM site, and between MPs and each name server of the file /etc/resolv.conf.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Verify if the UDP/TCP port 53 is open between NOAM and each DR-NOAM site</p>	<p>From the command prompt of the server with the alarm:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Issue the <code>sudo nmap -sTU -p 53 <DR-NOAM hostname></code> command. Verify that the customer firewall is configured to allow DNS traffic on UDP/TCP port 53: <pre>[admusr@Icepick-NO-A ~]\$ sudo nmap -sTU -p 53 Icepick-DRNOAM-A Starting Nmap 5.51 (http://nmap.org) at 2018-03-02 17:57 EST Nmap scan report for Icepick-DRNOAM-A (10.75.202.173) Host is up (0.00025s latency). rDNS record for 10.75.202.173: Icepick-DRNOAM-A.platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com PORT STATE SERVICE 53/tcp open domain 53/udp open domain MAC Address: 02:05:39:E0:60:8A (Unknown) Nmap done: 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 5.60 seconds [admusr@Icepick-NO-A ~]\$</pre> <p>If port is reported as any state other than “Open”, then inform the Customer before accepting the upgrade.</p> <p>Note: If the ports are reported as “Closed” it may be because no services are running on the far end. Check with the Customer if the firewall has been configured to allow DNS traffic on port 53.</p> <p>If the port is reported as “Filtered” then the port is likely blocked by a Firewall and the upgrade MUST not be accepted until the Customer confirms that their network will allow DNS traffic on port 53.</p>

Step #	Procedure	Description
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify if the UDP/TCP port 53 is open between NOAM and each SOAM site	<p>From the command prompt of the server with the alarm:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Issue the <code>sudo nmap -sTU -p 53 <SOAM hostname></code> command. 2. Verify the customer firewall is configured to allow DNS traffic on UDP/TCP port 53: <pre>[admusr@Icepick-NO-A ~]\$ sudo nmap -sTU -p 53 Icepick-SO-A Starting Nmap 5.51 (http://nmap.org) at 2018-03-02 17:57 EST Nmap scan report for Icepick-SO-A (10.75.202.173) Host is up (0.00025s latency). rDNS record for 10.75.202.173: Icepick-SO-A.platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com PORT STATE SERVICE 53/tcp open domain 53/udp open domain MAC Address: 02:05:39:E0:60:8A (Unknown) Nmap done: 1 IP address (1 host up) scanned in 5.60 seconds</pre> 3. If port is reported as any state other than “Open” then inform the Customer before accepting the upgrade. <p>Note: If the ports are reported as “Closed” it may be because no services are running on the far end. Verify with the Customer that the firewall has been configured to allow DNS traffic on port 53.</p> 4. If the port is reported as “Filtered” then the port is likely to be blocked by a firewall and the upgrade MUST not be accepted until the Customer confirms that their network will allow DNS traffic on port 53.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify if the UDP/TCP port 53 is open between MP and each name server of the /etc/resolv.conf file	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. List the contents of the file <code>/etc/resolv.conf</code> via the “<code>sudo cat etc/resolv.conf</code>” command. 2. Verify that the Customer Firewall is configured to allow DNS traffic on UDP/TCP port 53 to the addressed from the file <code>/etc/resolv.conf</code>: <pre>[admusr@Icepick-DAMP-1 ~]\$ sudo cat /etc/resolv.conf (lookups) domain platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com nameserver 10.240.50.134 nameserver 10.240.50.133 search platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com 500lab.com labs.tekelec.com labs.nc.tekelec.com [admusr@Icepick-DAMP-1 ~]\$</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
		<pre>[admusr@Icepick-DAMP-1 ~]\$ sudo nmap -sTU -p 53 10.240.50.134 10.240.50.133 Starting Nmap 5.51 (http://nmap.org) at 2018- 03-02 17:46 EST Nmap scan report for Icepick-SO-B- imi.platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com (10.240.50.134) Host is up (0.00022s latency). PORT STATE SERVICE 53/tcp open domain 53/udp open domain MAC Address: 02:17:B4:4F:DA:B6 (Unknown) Nmap scan report for Icepick-SO-A- imi.platform.cgbu.us.oracle.com (10.240.50.133) Host is up (0.00025s latency). PORT STATE SERVICE 53/tcp open domain 53/udp open domain MAC Address: 02:EE:13:E2:2C:EF (Unknown) Nmap done: 2 IP addresses (2 hosts up) scanned in 5.66 seconds [admusr@Icepick-DAMP-1 ~]\$</pre> <p>If port is reported as any state other than “Open” then inform the Customer before accepting the upgrade.</p> <p>Note: If the ports are reported as “Closed” it may be because no services are running on the far end. Verify with the Customer that the firewall has been configured to allow DNS traffic on port 53.</p> <p>If the port is reported as “Filtered” then the port is likely to be blocked by a Firewall and the upgrade MUST not be accepted until the Customer confirms that their network will allow DNS traffic on port 53.</p>

Appendix Q. Workaround to Resolve DB Site Replication Alarms

The following procedure resolves DB site replication alarms if encountered during the upgrade. Database (DB) replication failure alarms may display during an Auto Site Upgrade or during an event that resets multiple servers in parallel. The DB on the child servers is not updated until resolved.

Procedure 65. Workaround to Resolve DB Site Replication Alarms

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure restarts the inetrep process on the server that has a DB replication failure alarm.</p> <p>Note: All UI displays are sample representations of upgrade screens. The actual display may vary slightly.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Log into the server	Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the active NOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Check if the replication links are up	Execute this command: <pre>irepstat</pre> Some of the B-C and C-C replications links may be down.
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Resolve replication issue(s)	Execute this command: <pre>sudo pm.kill inetrep</pre>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat, if needed	Repeat procedure on each affected server

Appendix R. Workaround to Resolve the Server HA Switchover Issue


The following procedure resolves the HA switchover issue.

Procedure 66. Resolve the HA Switchover Issue on Affected Server(s)

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure restarts the cmha process on the server that has HA switchover issue. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Log into the server</p>	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the NOAM server which is experiencing the HA switchover issue :</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server CLI: Resolve HA switchover issue(s)</p>	<p>Execute this command:</p> <pre>sudo pm.kill cmha</pre>
<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Repeat, if needed</p>	<p>Repeat procedure on each affected server.</p>

Appendix S. Workaround to Resolve Device Deployment Failed Alarm

Procedure 67. Resolve Device Deployment Failed Alarm

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure is to resolve the device deployment failed alarm i.e. 10054</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content;"> <p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p> </div> <p>Log into the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP GUI: Identify server(s) and interface(s) with alarm</p>	<p>Navigate to current alarm details and identify the server and interface where the 10054 - Device Deployment Failed alarm is displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 2. Look for the 10054 alarm make a list of the server(s) and interface(s).

Step #	Procedure	Description
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAMP VIP GUI: Corrective action for alarm 10054	<p>Interfaces like xmi and imi are in locked state and do not allow editing as a corrective action.</p> <p>For xmi and imi interfaces, first unlock the interface and for other interfaces skip steps (a) to (d) below.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Configuration > Networking > Networks, select the respective "Network element" tab used for the server configuration 2. Click on the Network Name row. 3. Click Unlock. Click on the checkbox to confirm it and click OK. 4. To unlock the network for the particular device, navigate to Configuration > Networking > Devices. 5. Click on the Server tab from the list in Step 2. 6. Select each interface row one by one for which alarm is showing and click Edit. 7. Click OK. <p>Note: Give some time to system to auto correct the condition to clear the alarm.</p> <p>Once this step is done, lock the network back again which were unlocked above.</p> <p>For xmi and imi interfaces, lock the interface back, for other interfaces skip (a) to (d) below.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. To lock the network for a specific device, navigate to Configuration > Networking > Networks, select the respective Network element tab used for the server configuration. 9. Click the Network Name row. 10. Click Lock. Click on the checkbox to confirm it and click OK.


Appendix T. Workaround to Resolve syscheck Error for CPU Failure

Procedure 68. Workaround to Resolve syscheck Error for CPU Failure

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>Workaround to resolve syscheck error for CPU failure.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Log into the server using CLI on which syscheck is failing	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to log into the server identified.</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<SERVER_XMI> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Server CLI: Execute workaround	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Edit the cpu config file. <pre>\$ sudo vim /usr/TKLC/plat/lib/Syscheck/modules/system/cpu/config</pre> 2. Comment out the all texts that reads: EXPECTED_CPUS= by putting # at the beginning of the line, for example: <pre># EXPECTED_CPUS=2</pre> 3. Save the cpu config file. 4. Reconfig the syscheck by running these commands: <pre>sudo syscheck --unconfig sudo syscheck --reconfig sudo syscheck</pre> <p>CPU related errors do not display.</p>


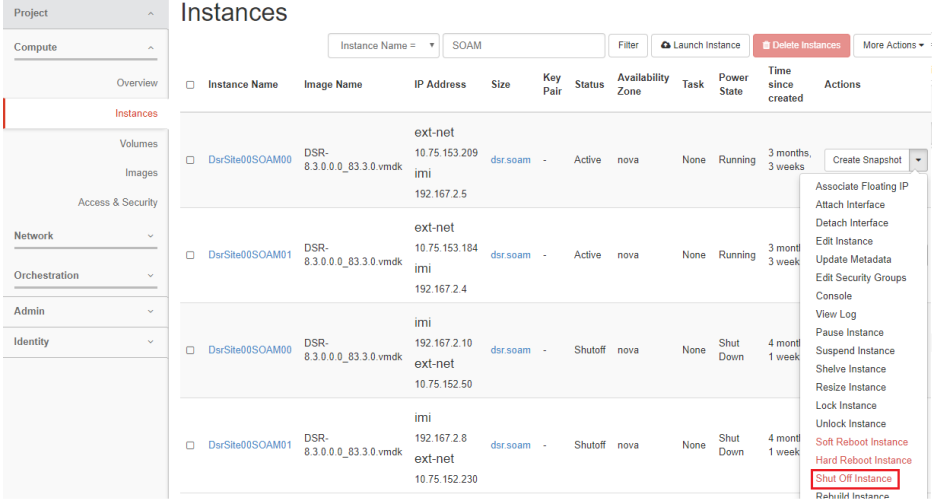
Appendix U. Create a Link for ComAgent

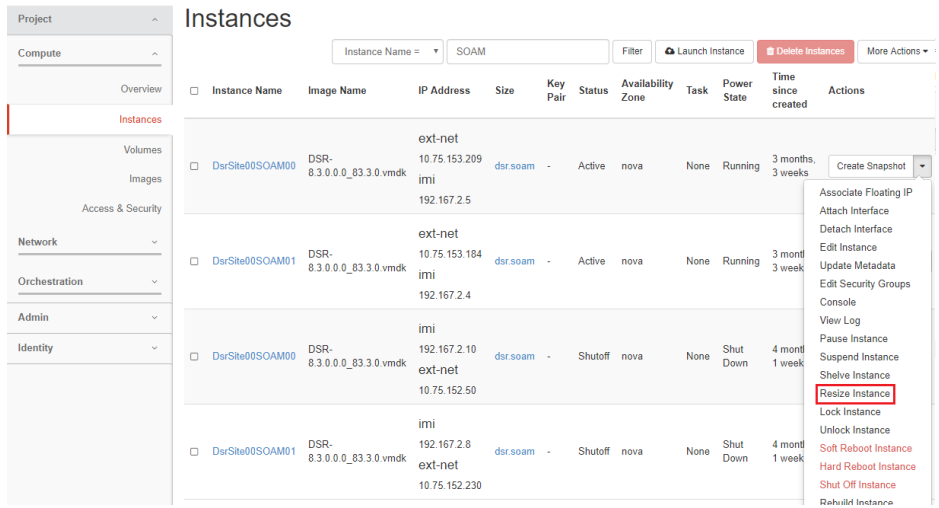
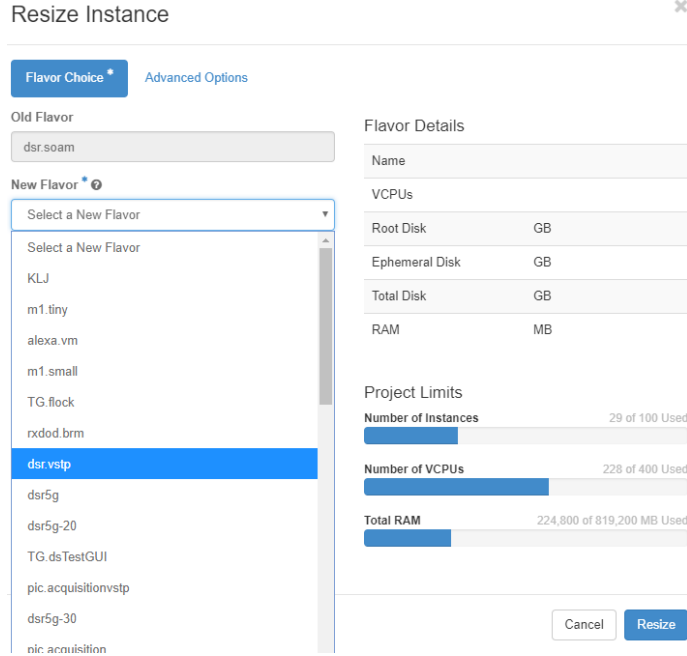
Procedure 69. Create a Link for ComAgent

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about creating a symbolic link of Comagent.</p> <p>Note: This procedure is executed only after all servers in the same server group are backed out.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Server CLI: Log into the server (if not already done)</p> 	<p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the server under backout:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server address> password: <enter password></pre> <p>Answer yes if you are asked to confirm the identity of the server.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Server: Create a link for ComAgent</p>	<p>Execute the following commands to create a Comagent link:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to /var/TKLC/appworks/library. <pre>\$ cd /var/TKLC/appworks/library</pre> 2. Create a link <pre>\$ sudo ln -s /usr/TKLC/comagent-gui/gui/ Comagent</pre> <p>Verify if the ComAgent link has been restored.</p> <pre>[admusr@HPC-NO1 library]\$ ls -ltr total 56 drwxr-xr-x 7 awadmin awadm 4096 Aug 25 2017 Diameter lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 47 Dec 15 02:05 Zend -> /usr/TKLC/plat/www/zend-framework/library/Zend/ lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 21 Dec 15 02:07 Awps7 -> /usr/TKLC/awps7/gui/ lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 29 Dec 15 02:07 TransportMgr -> /usr/TKLC/awptransportmgr/gui lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 38 Dec 15 02:07 Exgstack -> /usr/TKLC/awptransportmgr/gui/Exgstack drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 Dec 31 15:58 Rbar drwxr-xr-x 4 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:42 AWCLI drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Radius drwxr-xr-x 4 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Dca drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Fabr drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Gla drwxr-xr-x 2 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Loadgen drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Mapiwf drwxr-xr-x 6 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Pdra drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Sbr drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:44 Vstp lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 18 May 22 10:44 Ipfe -> /usr/TKLC/ipfe/gui drwxr-xr-x 3 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:45 Csbr drwxr-xr-x 17 awadmin awadm 4096 May 22 10:45 AppWorks lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 27 May 22 11:47 Comagent -> /usr/TKLC/comagent-gui/gui/</pre> <p>If the output is received as highlighted in red, the softlink for Comagent directory has been restored.</p>

Appendix V. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on an OpenStack system

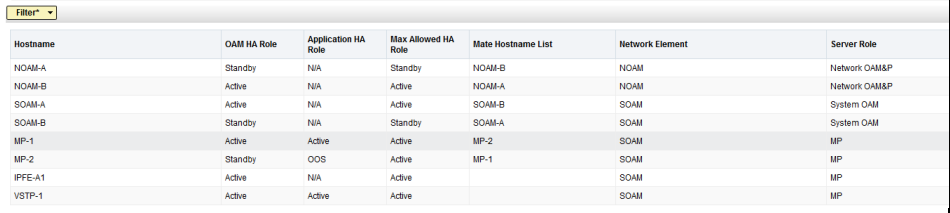
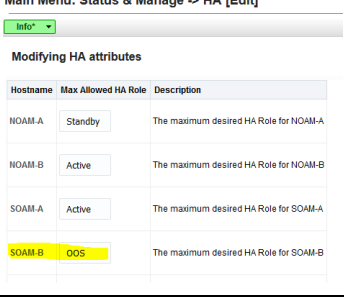
Procedure 70. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on an OpenStack system

Step #	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about changing SOAM VM profile for increased MP Capacity. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Log in to OpenStack</p>	<p>Log in to Openstack GUI horizon dashboard.</p> 
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Identify and shut down the instance</p>	<p>Go to the corresponding Instance and select the Shut Off Instance option from the list.</p> 

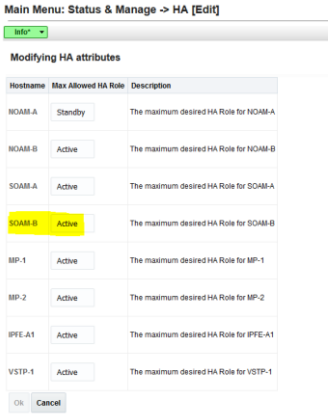
Step #	Procedure	Description																																																							
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Resize instance</p>	<p>Once the instance is in Shutoff state, select the Resize Instance option from the list:</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Instances' page with a table of instances. The instance 'DsrSite00SOAM00' is in the 'Shutoff' state. The 'Actions' menu for this instance is open, and the 'Resize Instance' option is highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Instance Name</th> <th>Image Name</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th>Size</th> <th>Key Pair</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Availability Zone</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Power State</th> <th>Time since created</th> <th>Actions</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DsrSite00SOAM00</td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk</td> <td>10.75.153.209 192.167.2.5</td> <td>dsr.soam</td> <td>-</td> <td>Active</td> <td>nova</td> <td>None</td> <td>Running</td> <td>3 months, 3 weeks</td> <td>Create Snapshot, Associate Floating IP, Attach Interface, Detach Interface, Edit Instance, Update Metadata, Edit Security Groups, Console, View Log, Pause Instance, Suspend Instance, Shelf Instance, Resize Instance, Lock Instance, Unlock Instance, Soft Reboot Instance, Hard Reboot Instance, Shut Off Instance, Rebuild Instance</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DsrSite00SOAM01</td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk</td> <td>10.75.153.184 192.167.2.4</td> <td>dsr.soam</td> <td>-</td> <td>Active</td> <td>nova</td> <td>None</td> <td>Running</td> <td>3 months, 3 weeks</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>DsrSite00SOAM00</td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk</td> <td>192.167.2.10 10.75.152.50</td> <td>dsr.soam</td> <td>-</td> <td>Shutoff</td> <td>nova</td> <td>None</td> <td>Shut Down</td> <td>4 months, 1 week</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>DsrSite00SOAM01</td> <td>DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk</td> <td>192.167.2.8 10.75.152.230</td> <td>dsr.soam</td> <td>-</td> <td>Shutoff</td> <td>nova</td> <td>None</td> <td>Shut Down</td> <td>4 months, 1 week</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Instance Name	Image Name	IP Address	Size	Key Pair	Status	Availability Zone	Task	Power State	Time since created	Actions	DsrSite00SOAM00	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	10.75.153.209 192.167.2.5	dsr.soam	-	Active	nova	None	Running	3 months, 3 weeks	Create Snapshot, Associate Floating IP, Attach Interface, Detach Interface, Edit Instance, Update Metadata, Edit Security Groups, Console, View Log, Pause Instance, Suspend Instance, Shelf Instance, Resize Instance , Lock Instance, Unlock Instance, Soft Reboot Instance, Hard Reboot Instance, Shut Off Instance, Rebuild Instance	DsrSite00SOAM01	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	10.75.153.184 192.167.2.4	dsr.soam	-	Active	nova	None	Running	3 months, 3 weeks		DsrSite00SOAM00	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	192.167.2.10 10.75.152.50	dsr.soam	-	Shutoff	nova	None	Shut Down	4 months, 1 week		DsrSite00SOAM01	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	192.167.2.8 10.75.152.230	dsr.soam	-	Shutoff	nova	None	Shut Down	4 months, 1 week	
Instance Name	Image Name	IP Address	Size	Key Pair	Status	Availability Zone	Task	Power State	Time since created	Actions																																															
DsrSite00SOAM00	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	10.75.153.209 192.167.2.5	dsr.soam	-	Active	nova	None	Running	3 months, 3 weeks	Create Snapshot, Associate Floating IP, Attach Interface, Detach Interface, Edit Instance, Update Metadata, Edit Security Groups, Console, View Log, Pause Instance, Suspend Instance, Shelf Instance, Resize Instance , Lock Instance, Unlock Instance, Soft Reboot Instance, Hard Reboot Instance, Shut Off Instance, Rebuild Instance																																															
DsrSite00SOAM01	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	10.75.153.184 192.167.2.4	dsr.soam	-	Active	nova	None	Running	3 months, 3 weeks																																																
DsrSite00SOAM00	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	192.167.2.10 10.75.152.50	dsr.soam	-	Shutoff	nova	None	Shut Down	4 months, 1 week																																																
DsrSite00SOAM01	DSR-8.3.0.0.0_83.3.0.vmdk	192.167.2.8 10.75.152.230	dsr.soam	-	Shutoff	nova	None	Shut Down	4 months, 1 week																																																
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Select the new flavor that meets the standard VCPUs size and memory configuration</p>	<p>1. Select the New Flavor that meets the standard VCPUs size and memory configuration.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Resize Instance' dialog box. The 'New Flavor' dropdown menu is open, showing a list of flavors. The 'dsr.v5p' flavor is selected. The 'Project Limits' section shows the current usage of instances, VCPUs, and RAM.</p> <p>2. Click Resize.</p> <p>Note: For information on the recommended vCPUs size and memory, refer to [8] DSR 8.5 Cloud Benchmarking document.</p>																																																							

Appendix W. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on a VMware system

Procedure 71. Change SOAM VM Profile for Increased MP Capacity on a VMware system

Step #	Procedure	Description																																																															
<p>This procedure describes how to change the SOAM VM profile on a VMware system. Check off (☐) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>																																																																	
1. ☐	Log in to Active NOAM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log in to the Active NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Main Menu > Status & Manage > HA. Confirm that at least one SOAM has OAM HA Role of Active. Identify the Active and Standby SOAM server based upon the "OAM HA Role" column. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> HA</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>OAM HA Role</th> <th>Application HA Role</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Mate Hostname List</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Server Role</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NOAM-A</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>NOAM-B</td> <td>NOAM</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOAM-B</td> <td>Active</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>NOAM-A</td> <td>NOAM</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOAM-A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>SOAM-B</td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>System OAM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOAM-B</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>SOAM-A</td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>System OAM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP-1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP-2</td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>MP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP-2</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>OOS</td> <td>Active</td> <td>MP-1</td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>MP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>IPFE-A1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>Active</td> <td></td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>MP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VSTP-1</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Active</td> <td></td> <td>SOAM</td> <td>MP</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element	Server Role	NOAM-A	Standby	N/A	Standby	NOAM-B	NOAM	Network OAM&P	NOAM-B	Active	N/A	Active	NOAM-A	NOAM	Network OAM&P	SOAM-A	Active	N/A	Active	SOAM-B	SOAM	System OAM	SOAM-B	Standby	N/A	Standby	SOAM-A	SOAM	System OAM	MP-1	Active	Active	Active	MP-2	SOAM	MP	MP-2	Standby	OOS	Active	MP-1	SOAM	MP	IPFE-A1	Active	N/A	Active		SOAM	MP	VSTP-1	Active	Active	Active		SOAM	MP
Hostname	OAM HA Role	Application HA Role	Max Allowed HA Role	Mate Hostname List	Network Element	Server Role																																																											
NOAM-A	Standby	N/A	Standby	NOAM-B	NOAM	Network OAM&P																																																											
NOAM-B	Active	N/A	Active	NOAM-A	NOAM	Network OAM&P																																																											
SOAM-A	Active	N/A	Active	SOAM-B	SOAM	System OAM																																																											
SOAM-B	Standby	N/A	Standby	SOAM-A	SOAM	System OAM																																																											
MP-1	Active	Active	Active	MP-2	SOAM	MP																																																											
MP-2	Standby	OOS	Active	MP-1	SOAM	MP																																																											
IPFE-A1	Active	N/A	Active		SOAM	MP																																																											
VSTP-1	Active	Active	Active		SOAM	MP																																																											
2. ☐	Check System Alarms	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Main Menu: Alarms & Events > View Active. Confirm that there are no alarms related to Replication, Merging, system health, or SOAMs. In case of any alarms, stop the activity, identify the cause of alarms, and resolve them, and then continue to the next steps when the alarms are cleared. 																																																															
3. ☐	Take Standby SOAM out of service in HA	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Main Menu > Status & Manage > HA. Press the Edit button in lower-left corner of the page. Take the SOAM identified as Standby in Step 1 to Max Allowed HA Role of OOS. Press OK. Information displays information banner "Pre-Validation passed-Data Not Committed". Press OK. The system goes back to the previous screen with the Standby SOAM now Showing OOS in "Max Allowed HA Role" and "OAM HA Role". At this point, the server is ready to be turned off for any change. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> HA [Edit]</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NOAM-A</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NOAM-B</td> <td>Active</td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-B</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOAM-A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOAM-B</td> <td>OOS</td> <td>The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-B</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Hostname	Max Allowed HA Role	Description	NOAM-A	Standby	The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-A	NOAM-B	Active	The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-B	SOAM-A	Active	The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-A	SOAM-B	OOS	The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-B																																																
Hostname	Max Allowed HA Role	Description																																																															
NOAM-A	Standby	The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-A																																																															
NOAM-B	Active	The maximum desired HA Role for NOAM-B																																																															
SOAM-A	Active	The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-A																																																															
SOAM-B	OOS	The maximum desired HA Role for SOAM-B																																																															
4. ☐	Stop/Shut down the VM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log in to Command Line Interface of the SOAM taken out of service. Execute the <code>sudo init 0</code> command. 																																																															

Step #	Procedure	Description
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	Modify the vCPU and Memory	<p>NOTE: Depending upon the VM manager, the exact steps may be different. Contact your VM manager for any help on the exact steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Confirm that the virtual machine is powered off. 2. Click the virtual machine. 3. Go to Settings. 4. Edit System Settings to change: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. vCPU: 8 b. RAM/Base Memory: 14,336 (14GB, 14 x 1024)
6. <input type="checkbox"/>	Start the VM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set Power State of VM to Power ON in the VM Manager and wait for a few minutes.
7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Log in to SOAM using CLI	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command to log in to the respective SOAM identified. <pre>ssh admusr@<SERVER_XMI> password: <enter password></pre> 2. Answer yes when prompted to confirm the identity of the server.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Confirm that the SOAM is showing 8 vCPU	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the SOAM CLI, execute the <code>mpstat -P ALL</code> command. The output should be one line for each vCPU. Confirm that for vCPU=8, the output shows 8 lines: <pre>[admusr@labSOAM ini]\$ mpstat -P ALL Linux 2.6.32-573.26.1.el6prere17.0.3.0.0_86.46.0.x86_64 (guruDSR-NO1) 05/01/2020 _x86_64_ (8 CPU) 06:31:04 AM CPU %usr %nice %sys %iowait %irq %soft %steal %guest %idle 06:31:04 AM all 0.72 0.30 0.39 0.03 0.00 0.00 0.10 0.00 98.46 06:31:04 AM 0 0.67 0.52 0.44 0.26 0.00 0.00 0.11 0.00 97.99 06:31:04 AM 1 0.85 0.22 0.47 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.10 0.00 98.36 06:31:04 AM 2 0.56 0.48 0.38 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.09 0.00 98.48 06:31:04 AM 3 0.58 0.22 0.35 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.09 0.00 98.76 06:31:04 AM 4 0.55 0.26 0.36 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.09 0.00 98.73 06:31:04 AM 5 1.44 0.18 0.40 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.11 0.00 97.86 06:31:04 AM 6 0.53 0.22 0.35 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.09 0.00 98.81 06:31:04 AM 7 0.53 0.29 0.38 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.08 0.00 98.71</pre>
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Check memory (RAM) size is 14 GB	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the SOAM CLI, execute the following command: <pre>cat /proc/meminfo vmstat -s</pre> <p>Sample output:</p> <pre>admusr@labNOAM ini]\$ cat /proc/meminfo MemTotal: 14007172 kB [admusr@labNOAM ini]\$ vmstat -s 14007172 total memory</pre>
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Increase measurement memory and queue size	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute the following command: <pre>sudo sh /usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/install/load.AppwMeasMem</pre> 2. Verify if the <code>MeasMem.ini</code> file is created for measurement memory size of 3072 MB: <pre>cat /var/TKLC/appworks/ini/MeasMem.ini</pre> <p>Note: INI entry should be <code>aw.measure.maxmem = 3072</code></p> 3. Verify that the measurement queue size is set to 2 in <code>LongParam</code> table where the parameter name "measurementMaxQueues" is 2: <pre>iqt -pE LongParam grep measurementMaxQueues</pre>

Step #	Procedure	Description
11. <input type="checkbox"/>	Bring back SOAM in to service	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log in to the Active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Main Menu > Status & Manage > HA. 3. Press the Edit button in the lower-left corner of the page. 4. Take the modified SOAM to Max Allowed HA Role of “ACTIVE”.  5. Press OK. Information displays information banner “Pre-Validation passed-Data Not Committed”. 6. Press OK. The system goes back to the previous screen with the Standby SOAM now showing ACTIVE in “Max Allowed HA Role”. 7. Wait for the time till this SOAM shows “STANDBY” in the “OAM HA Role”. At this point, the server is back to the normal operating status.
12. <input type="checkbox"/>	Take ACTIVE SOAM out of service in HA	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Main Menu > Status & Manage > HA. 2. Press the Edit button in the lower-left corner of the page. 3. Take the SOAM identified as ACTIVE in Step 1 to Max Allowed HA Role of OOS. 4. Press OK. Information displays the information banner “Pre-Validation passed-Dat Not Committed”. 5. Press OK. The system goes back to the previous screen with the ACTIVE SOAM showing OOS in “Max Allowed HA Role” and “OAM HA Role”. 6. Confirm that the SOAM that was Standby earlier is now ACTIVE in “Max Allowed HA Role” and “OAM HA Role”. At this point, the server is ready to be turned off for any change.
13. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat on Active SOAM VM	Repeat Step 4 to 11 on the SOAM VM.

Appendix X. Reset the SOAP Password

Procedure 72. Reset the SOAP Password

Step#	Procedure	Description
<p>This procedure provides the details about resetting the SOAP password. When Oracle is upgraded, the following procedure resets the SOAP password, for the DSR to perform self-authenticate with IDIH.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Login to NOAM: Login on the active NOAM server</p>	<p>1. Login as admusr on the active NOAM server.</p> <p>2. Retrieve the TPD web service password in plaintext by executing:</p> <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/aw.wallet credential get cmsopa password</pre> <p>The command will print the current plaintext configuration web service password.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre>7w57q9U0OvOtKtgtLVTMajDcXfhCj2F4nyXw45qK6EXNHA9jACyQ</pre>
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Login to the IDIH application server</p>	<p>1. Login as admusr on the IDIH application server.</p> <p>2. Change the user to tekelec by executing:</p> <pre>sudo su - tekelec</pre> <p>3. Reset/Create the Configuration web service password:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Go to the directory <code>/usr/TKLC/xIH/apps/trace-refdata-adapter/</code> run <code>./resetSoapPassword.sh</code> When prompted for password: <enter the password obtained from Step1.2> <p>Note: This script prints the encrypted password. The new encrypted SOAP password is stored into IDIH Oracle database.</p> <p>4. Verify if the password is stored in IDIH Oracle database by executing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <code>sqlplus /@NSP</code> Select * from DSR_USER_CREDENTIALS; Here you should see the same encrypted password as in Step 2.3. Type <code>exit</code> to exit from database. <p>5. After verifying that password is stored in database in Step 2.4, the WebLogic application server must be restarted on IDIH application server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Become admusr by executing: <code>exit</code> Stop the WebLogic application server by executing: <code>sudo service xih-apps stop</code> Start the WebLogic application server by executing: <code>sudo service xih-apps start</code> <p>The Weblogic server might take few minutes to resume its service.</p> <p>Note: Upon completion of the above steps, in IDIH <code>/var/TKLC/xIH/log/apps/weblogic/apps/application.log</code> file you should see NO Error.</p>

Appendix Y. Restore the Servers with Backout Errors

Procedure 73. Restore the Servers with Backout Errors

Step#	Procedure	Description
<p>This workaround resolves a backout failure error. Execute this procedure on the failed server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, it is recommended to contact My Oracle Support (MOS) and ask for assistance.</p>		
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the rpm	<p>Recognize the rpm (dsr/dpi) which yielded the scriptlet failure. Examine the upgrade log at /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log for errors that occurred during the backout.</p> <pre>\$ rpm -qa <rpm_name></pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ rpm - qa <TKLCdsr.x86_64></pre> <p>Note: There will be two rpms, identify the newer rpm.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Uninstall the rpm	<p>Uninstall the newer version of the rpm:</p> <pre>rpm -e <rpm_name></pre>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify the rpm	<p>Execute this command:</p> <pre>\$ rpm -qa <rpm_name></pre> <p>Note: There must be a single rpm.</p>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	Restore the database	<p>Run the <code>sudo /var/tmp/backout_restore</code> command to restore the database and restart the server.</p>

Appendix Z. My Oracle Support (MOS)

My Oracle Support

MOS (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>. When calling, make the selections in the sequence shown on the Support telephone menu:

1. Select **2** for New Service Request.
2. Select **3** for Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support.
3. Select one of the following options:
 - For technical issues such as creating a new Service Request (SR), select **1**.
 - For non-technical issues such as registration or assistance with MOS, select **2**.

You are connected to a live agent who can assist you with MOS registration and opening a support ticket. MOS is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, and 365 days a year.

Emergency Response

In the event of a critical service situation, emergency response is offered by the CAS main number at 1-800-223-1711 (toll-free in the US), or by calling the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>. The emergency response provides immediate coverage, automatic escalation, and other features to ensure that the critical situation is resolved as rapidly as possible.

A critical situation is defined as a problem with the installed equipment that severely affects service, traffic, or maintenance capabilities, and requires immediate corrective action. Critical situations affect service and/or system operation resulting in one or several of these situations:

- A total system failure that results in loss of all transaction processing capability
- Significant reduction in system capacity or traffic handling capability
- Loss of the system's ability to perform automatic system reconfiguration
- Inability to restart a processor or the system
- Corruption of system databases that requires service affecting corrective actions
- Loss of access for maintenance or recovery operations
- Loss of the system ability to provide any required critical or major trouble notification

Any other problem severely affecting service, capacity/traffic, billing, and maintenance capabilities may be defined as critical by prior discussion and agreement with Oracle.

Locate Product Documentation on the Oracle Help Center

Oracle Communications customer documentation is available on the web at the Oracle Help Center (OHC) site, <http://docs.oracle.com>. You do not have to register to access these documents. Viewing these files requires Adobe Acrobat Reader, which can be downloaded at <http://www.adobe.com>.

1. Access the **Oracle Help Center** site at <http://docs.oracle.com>.
2. Click Industries.
3. Under the **Oracle Communications** subheading, click the **Oracle Communications documentation** link. The Communications Documentation page appears. Most products covered by these documentation sets display under the headings **Network Session Delivery and Control Infrastructure** or **"Platforms."**

4. Click on your Product and then the Release Number. A list of the entire documentation set for the selected product and release displays. To download a file to your location, right-click the PDF link, select *Save target as* (or similar command based on your browser), and save to a local folder.